Contents

A-Z

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

The Ultimate Driving Machine



THE BMW X3.

OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW EfficientDynamics
Less emissions. More driving pleasure.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

More about BMW

bmwusa.com



The Ultimate Driving Machine

01 40 2 900 958 ue

CarManuals2.com



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

CarManuals2.com

X3 xDrive28i
X3 xDrive35i

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the printed or integrated Owner's Manual are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

Supplementary information can be found in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable drive.

BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

© 2012 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English II/12, 03 12 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

CarManuals2.com

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 284.

6 Notes

At a glance
12 Cockpit
16 iDrive
22 Voice activation system
25 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Controls
30 Opening and closing
46 Adjusting
55 Transporting children safely
59 Driving
71 Displays
85 Lamps
90 Safety
101 Driving stability control systems
107 Driving comfort
119 Climate control
126 Interior equipment
132 Storage compartments

Driving tips
138 Things to remember when driving
141 Loading
144 Saving fuel

Navigation
150 Navigation system

Entertainment
170 Tone
172 Radio
180 CD/multimedia

Communication
204 Telephone
214 Office
223 Contacts
224 ConnectedDrive

Mobility
234 Refueling
236 Fuel
237 Wheels and tires
245 Engine compartment
247 Engine oil
250 Coolant
251 Maintenance
253 Replacing components
260 Breakdown assistance
265 Care

Reference
272 Technical data
275 Short commands of the voice activation system
284 Everything from A to Z

CarManuals2.com

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

CarManuals2.com

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any questions, your service center will be glad to advise you at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: bmwusa.com.

Symbols

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, in this Owner's Manual, equipment is also described and illustrated that is not available in your vehicle, e.g. because of the selected optional equipment or the country-specific variants.

This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

For options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently than shown in the illustrations.

Status of the Owner's Manual

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, re-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

quires suitable maintenance and repair methods.

Therefore, have this work performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel.

CarManuals2.com

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

Parts and Accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW. When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle. BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship. BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW. BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants. Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers. Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information. Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region,

you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

At a glance

These overviews of buttons, switches and displays are intended to familiarize you with your vehicle. You will also become quickly acquainted with the available control concepts and options.

CarManuals2.com

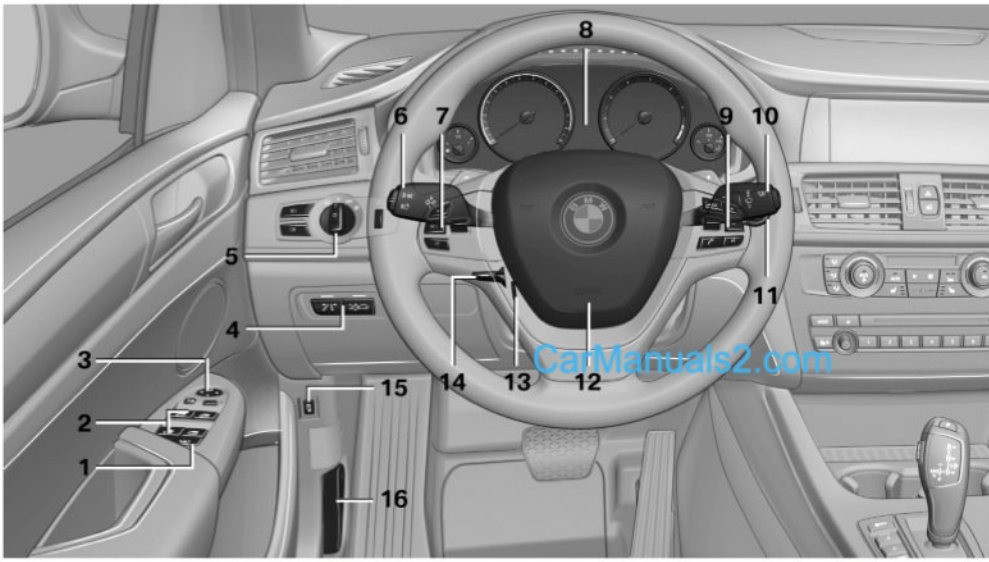
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Cockpit

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

All around the steering wheel



CarManuals2.com

1 Rear window safety switch 43
2 Power windows 42
3 Exterior mirror operation 52
4 Lane departure warning 98
Collision warning 107
5 Lamps
Front fog lamps 88
Parking lamps 85
Low beams 85



Automatic headlamp control 86

Daytime running lights 86

Adaptive light control 87

High-beam Assistant 87



Instrument lighting 88

6 Steering column stalk, left



Turn signal 65



High beams, headlamp flasher 65



High-beam Assistant 87



Roadside parking lamps 86



Computer 80

7 Steering wheel buttons, left



Store speed 109



Resume speed 110



Cruise control on/off, interrupting 109

Cruise control rocker switch 80

8 Instrument cluster 71

9 Steering wheel buttons, right



Entertainment source



Volume

CarManuals2.com



Voice activation 22



Telephone 204

Thumbwheel for selection lists 109

10 Steering column stalk, right



Windshield wipers 65



Rain sensor 66



Clean the windshields and headlamps 67



Rear window wiper 67

11 

Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 60



Auto Start/Stop function 60

12 Horn

13 

Steering wheel heating 54

14 Adjust steering wheel 54

15 

Open the tailgate 37

16 Unlock hood 245

All around the center console



CarManuals2.com

1 Headliner 15

2 Control Display 16

3 Glove compartment 132

4 Air vent 124

5 Hazard warning system 260

Central locking system 33

6 Automatic climate control 119

7 Radio 172
CD/multimedia 180

8 Controller with buttons 16

9 Parking brake 62

AUTO H Auto Hold 63

10 PDC Park Distance Control 111
Backup camera 113
Top View 115

HDC Hill Descent Control 102

11 SPORT ECO PRO Driving Experience Switch 104

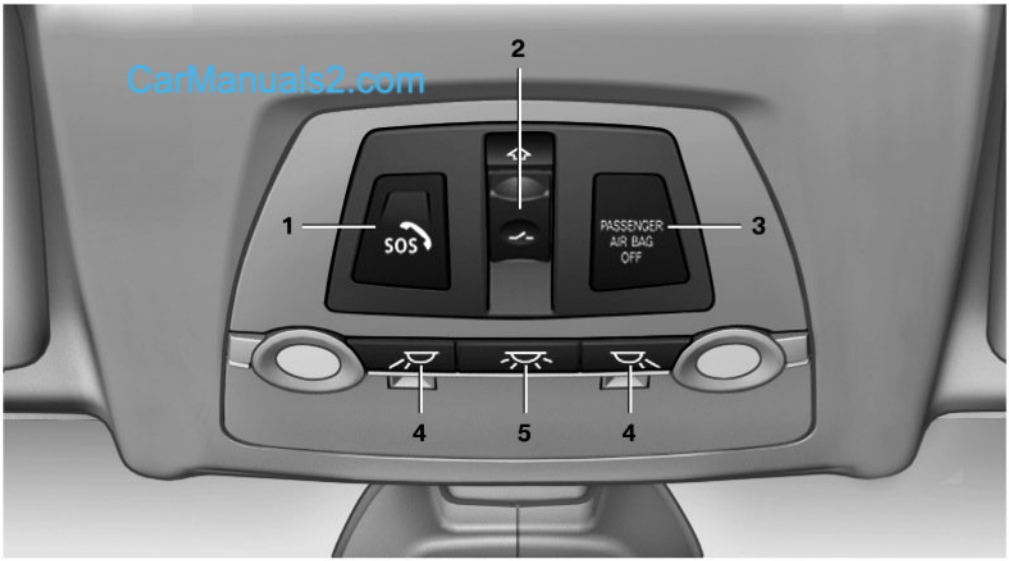
OFF DSC Dynamic Stability Control 101

12 Automatic transmission 68

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

All around the headliner

CarManuals2.com



1 

Emergency Request 260

2 
Panoramic glass sunroof 44

3 

Indicator lamp, front passenger airbag 92

4 
Reading lamps 89

5 
Interior lamps 89

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The concept

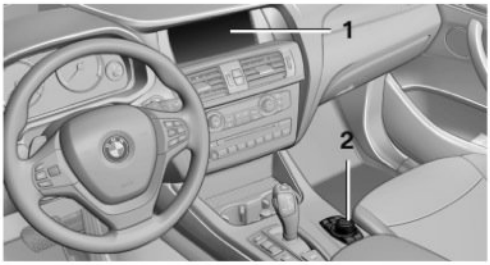
The iDrive combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

Using the iDrive during a trip

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle's occupants and to other road users, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow this.◄

Controls at a glance

Controls



1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and create the settings.

Control Display

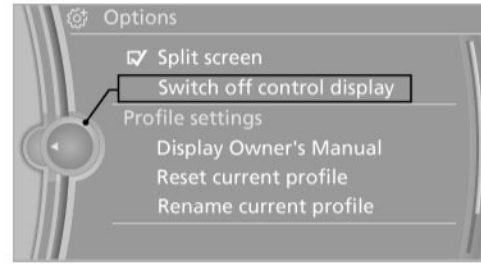
Notes

- To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.
- Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

Switching off

1. 

Press the button.
2. "Switch off control display"



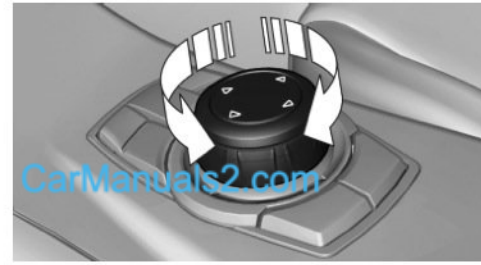
Switching on

Press the controller again to switch the screen back on.

Controller

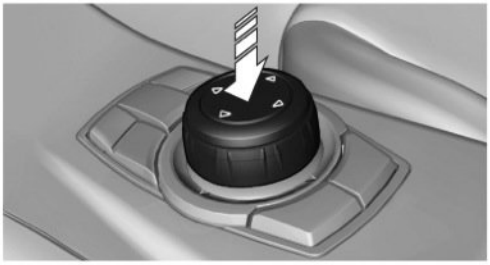
Select menu items and create settings.

1. Turn.

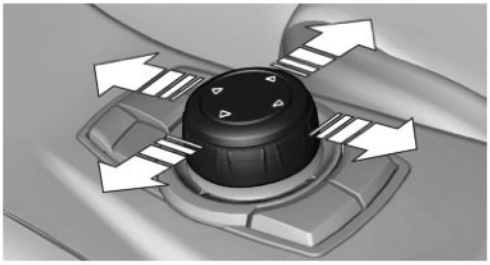


CarManuals2.com

2. Press.



3. Move in four directions.



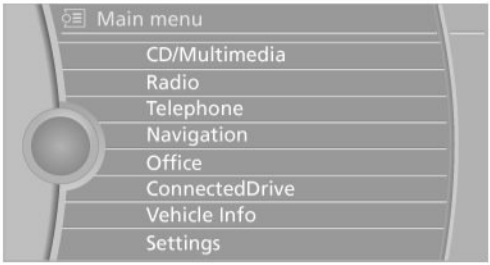
Buttons on controller

Press the button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu.
CD	Opens the CD/Multimedia menu.
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu.
TEL	Opens the Telephone menu.
BACK	Displays the previous panel.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating concept

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



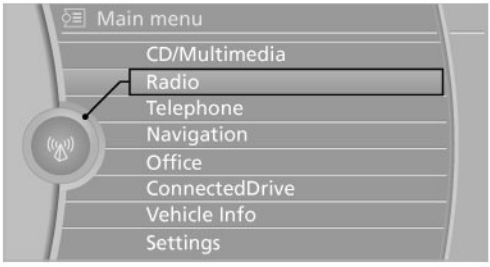
The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

CarManuals2.com

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

▷ Move the controller to the left.

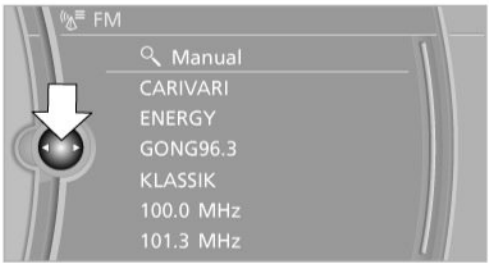
The current panel is closed and the previous panel is displayed.

The previous panel is opened again by pressing the BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

CarManuals2.com

▷ Move the controller to the right.

A new panel is opened on top of the previous display.



White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

View of an opened menu

When a menu is opened, it generally opens with the panel that was last selected in that menu. To display the first panel of a menu:

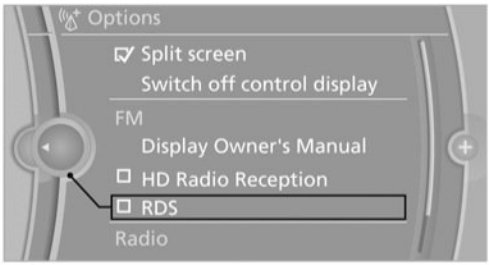
▷ Move the controller to the left repeatedly until the first panel is displayed.

▷ Press the menu button on the controller twice.

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Options menu

The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

▷ Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".

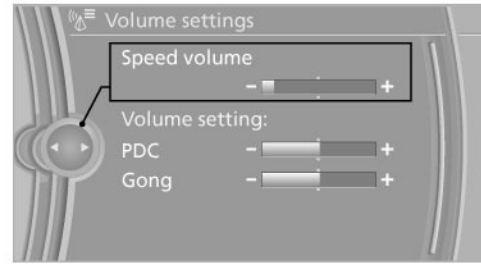
This area remains unchanged.

▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".

▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ The function is activated.

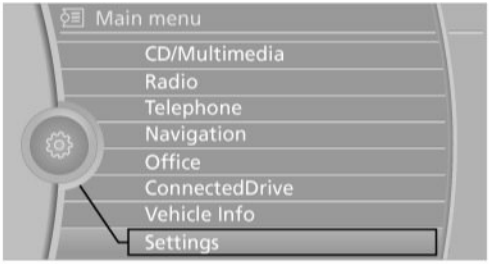
☐ The function is deactivated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

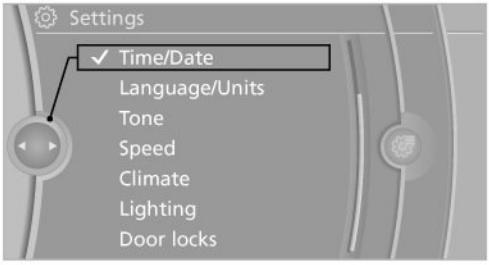
Example: setting the clock

Setting the clock

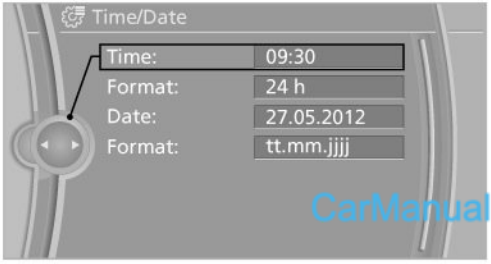
1. MENU Press the button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

6. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information

Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- Time.
- Current entertainment source.
- Sound output, on/off.
- Wireless network reception strength.
- Telephone status.
- Traffic bulletin reception.

Status field symbols

The symbols are grouped as follows.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio™ is switched on.
	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Wireless network reception strength Symbol flashes: searching for network.
	Wireless network is not available.
	Bluetooth is switched on.
	Roaming is active.

Symbol	Meaning
	Text message was received.
	Check the SIM card.
	SIM card is blocked.
	SIM card is missing.
	Enter the PIN.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player.
	Music collection.
gracenote	Gracenote® database.
	AUX-IN port.
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile phone audio interface.

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions are switched off.
	Request of the current vehicle position.

Split screen

General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the onboard computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

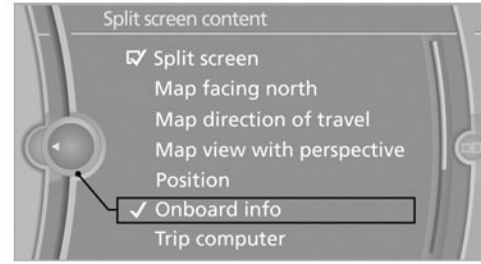
Switching the split screen on and off

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

CarManuals2.com

Selecting the display

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.



Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Saving a function

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. 1 ... 8 Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Running a function

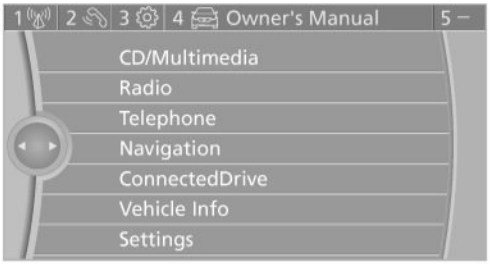
1 ... 8 Press the button.

The function will run immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the button assignment

Use a finger to touch the buttons. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.



- To display short information: touch the button.
- To display detailed information: touch the button for an extended period.

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approx. five seconds.
2. "OK"

Entering letters and numbers

General information

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

CarManuals2.com

Symbol	Function
I←	Press the controller: delete the letter or number.
I←	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.
␣	Enter a blank space.

Switching between cases, letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or ABC	Move the controller up.

Entry comparison

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

The entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters are offered during the entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: town/city names can be entered using the spelling of language available on the Control Display.

Voice activation system

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The concept

- Most functions that are displayed on the Control Display can be operated by spoken commands via the voice activation system. The system prompts you to make your entries.
- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be operated using the voice activation system.
- The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

Requirements

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

Set the language, refer to page 83.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

   The command is displayed in the instrument cluster.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, operate the function in this case via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

 Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

CarManuals2.com

The available commands depend on which menu is currently displayed on the Control Display.

There are short commands for functions of the main menu.

Some list entries, e.g. Phone book entries, can also be selected via the voice activation system. Speak these list entries exactly as they are displayed in the respective list.

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have the available commands read out loud for you: ›Voice commands‹

For example, if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.

Executing functions using short commands

Functions on the main menu can be performed directly by means of short commands, nearly ir-

respective of which menu item is currently selected, e.g., ›Vehicle status‹.

List of short commands of the voice activation system, refer to page 275.

Help dialog for the voice activation system

Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹

Additional commands for the help dialog:

- ›Help with examples‹: information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them are announced.
- ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system is announced.

Example: playing back a CD

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›C D and multimedia‹

   The medium last played is played back.
4. ›C D track ...‹ e.g., CD track 4.

CarManuals2.com

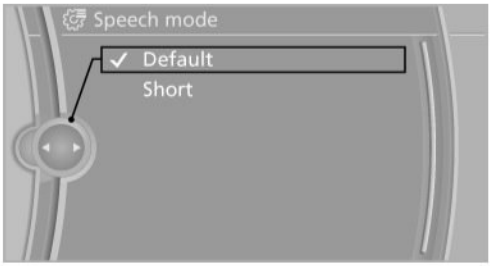
Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter version.

In the shorter variant of the voice dialog, the announcements from the system are issued in an abbreviated form.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the setting.



Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 260, in the vicinity of the interior mirror.

Environmental conditions

- Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name:

›Station ...‹ e. g. Classic Radio station

- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

CarManuals2.com

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

CarManuals2.com

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. The equipment and functions that are in the vehicle are described therein.

Components of the integrated Owner's Manual

The integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or access possibilities.

Quick Reference Guide

Located in the Quick Reference is important information for the operation of the vehicle, the operation of basic vehicle functions or for what to do in the event of a flat tire. This information can also be displayed during driving.

Search by pictures

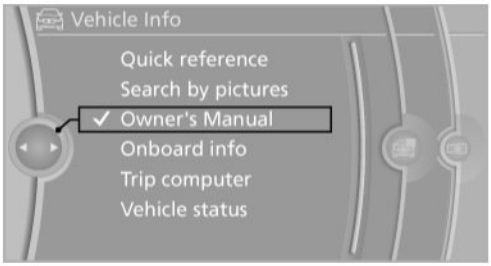
Information and descriptions based on illustrations can be searched via search by pictures. This is helpful, for example, if the description of an outfitting package that cannot be named is needed.

Owner's Manual

Information and descriptions can be searched by direct entry of a search term via the index.

Select components

1. MENU Press the button.
2. Turn the controller: open "Vehicle Info".
3. Press the controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Search by pictures"
   - ▷ "Owner's Manual"



Leafing through the Owner's Manual

Page by page with link access

Turn the controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

Page by page without link access

Leaf through the pages directly while skipping the links.

Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the controller to leaf from page to page.

Leaf back.

Leaf forward.

Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function

The relevant information can be opened directly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Opening during operation via iDrive

To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the options menu:

1. OPTION Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Display Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To change from a function, e.g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to switch between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press the button again to return to the function displayed last.
5. BACK Press the button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To switch back and forth repeatedly between the function displayed last and the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last, repeat steps 4 and 5. This opens a new panel every time.

CarManuals2.com

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. "Owner's Manual" Select via the iDrive.
2. 1...8 Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

Executing

1...8 Press the button.

The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.

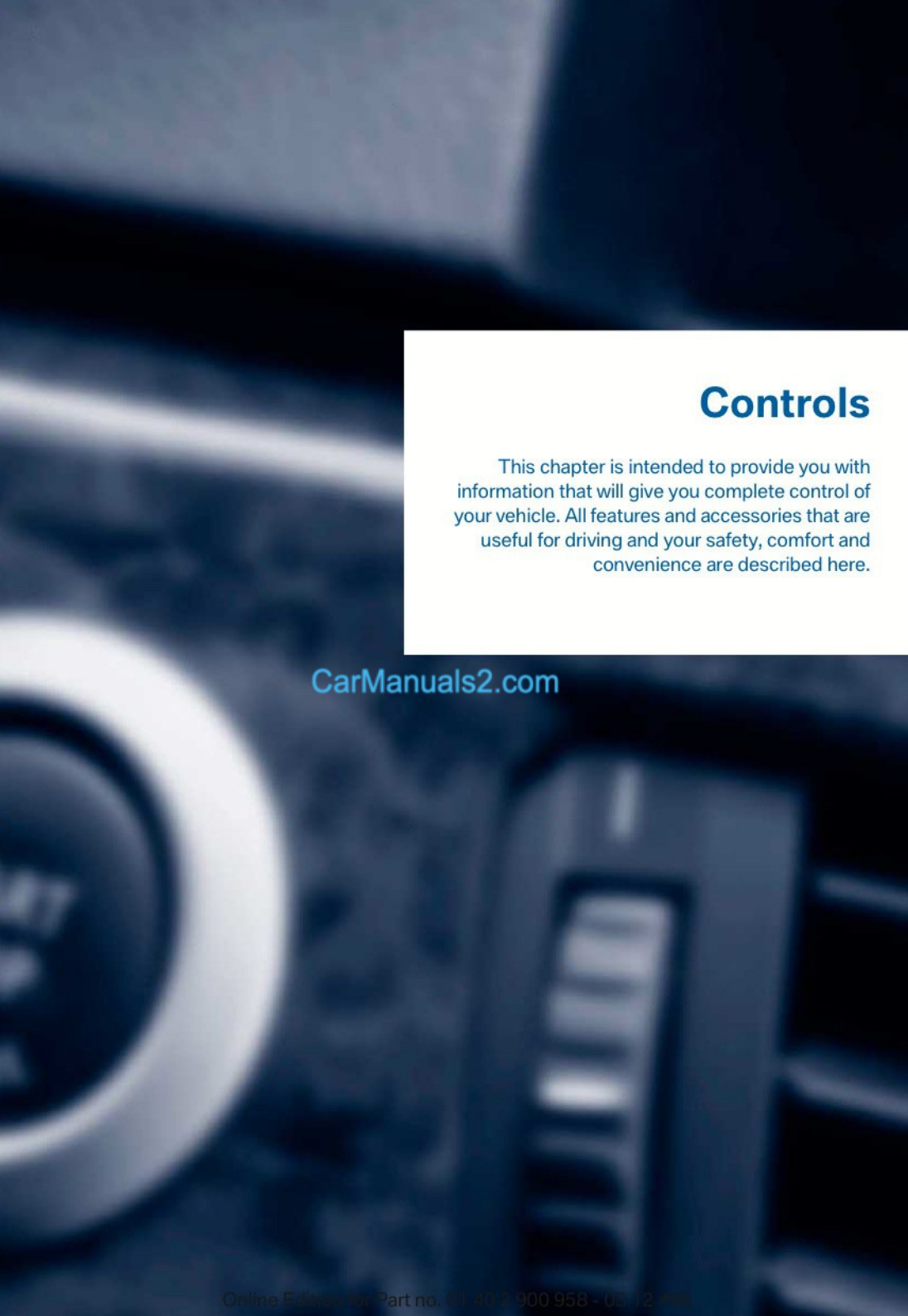
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 058 - US 2 490



Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information that will give you complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 500

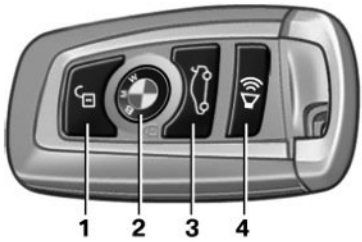
Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Remote control/key

Buttons on the remote control



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 Opening the tailgate
4 Panic mode, headlamp courtesy delay feature

General information

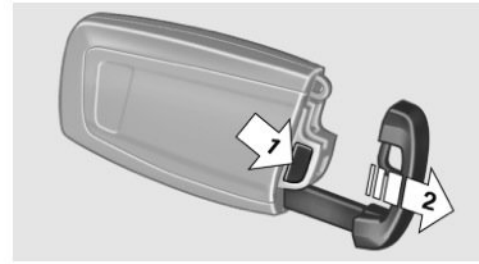
The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with keys.

Every remote control contains a replaceable battery.

The settings called up and implemented when the vehicle is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the vehicle, Personal Profile, refer to page 31.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, Service data in the remote control, refer to page 251.

Integrated key

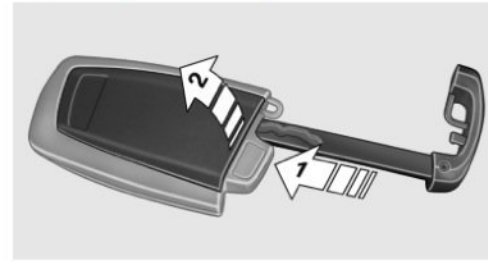


Press the button on the back of the remote control, arrow 1, and pull out the key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- Driver's door.
- Glove compartment on the front passenger side.

Replacing the battery



1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control.
2. Push in the catch with the key, arrow 1.
3. Remove the cover of the battery compartment, see arrow 2.
4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover closed.

CarManuals2.com

Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

New remote controls

CarManuals2.com

You can obtain new remote controls from your service center.

Loss of the remote controls

Lost remote controls can be blocked by your service center.

Emergency detection of remote control

It is possible to switch on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

- Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external sources.
- Discharged battery in the remote control.
- Interference of radio transmission by mobile devices in close proximity to the remote control.
- Interference of radio transmission by charger while charging items such as mobile devices in the vehicle.

A Check Control message is displayed if an attempt is made to switch on the ignition or start the engine.

Starting the engine in case of emergency detection of remote control



Automatic transmission: if a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the brake.

Personal Profile

The concept

Personal Profile concept

You can set several of your vehicle's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences.

- The settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.
- When the vehicle is unlocked, the profile that was last detected and called up with the remote control is used.
- Your personal settings will be recognized and called up again even if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by someone else with another remote control.

The individual settings are stored for three Personal Profiles and one guest profile.

Transmitting the settings

Your personal settings can be taken with you to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function. For more information, contact your service center.

Transmission takes place via:

- The USB interface in the glove compartment or the center console on a USB medium.

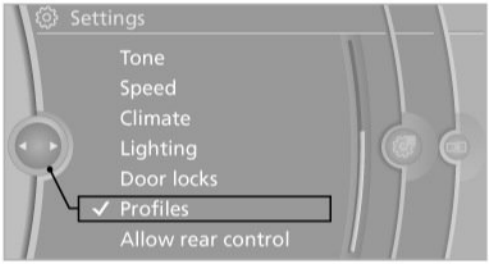
Profile management

Opening the profiles

A different profile can be called up than the one associated with the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"

2. "Profiles"



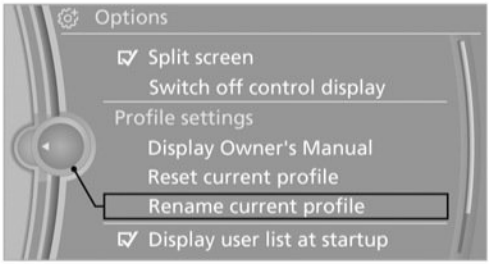
3. Select a profile.

The profile that is opened is assigned to the remote control currently in use.

Renaming profiles

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

   The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"



Resetting profiles

The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. "Profiles"

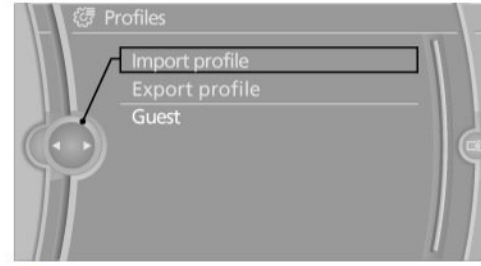
   The current profile is selected.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Reset current profile"

CarManuals2.com

Importing profiles

Existing settings and contacts are overwritten with the imported profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"



4. USB interface: "USB device"

Exporting profiles

Most settings of the active profile and the saved contacts can be exported.

This can be useful for storing and opening personal settings, e.g. if settings are accidentally changed or deleted.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. USB interface: "USB device"

Using the guest profile

The guest profile can be used to make individual settings without affecting the three Personal Profiles.

This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. The current profile is selected.
4. Open "Guest".
5. Adjust the settings.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Note: the guest profile cannot be renamed.

Display profile list during start

The profile list can be displayed during each start for selecting the desired profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display user list at startup"

Personal Profile settings

The following functions and settings can be stored in a profile.

More information on the settings can be found under:

- Collision warning: warning time, last setting on/off.
- Exterior mirror position.
- CD/Multimedia: audio source listened to last.
- Driving Experience Switch: sport program
- Driver's seat position: automatically retrieved after unlocking.
- Programmable memory buttons: assignment.
- Head-up Display: selection, brightness, position and rotation of the display.
- Headlamp courtesy delay feature: time setting.
- Tone: tone settings.
- Automatic climate control/Automatic climate control with enhanced features: settings.
- Navigation: map views, route criteria, voice output on/off.
- Park Distance Control PDC: adjusting the signal tone volume.
- Radio: stored stations, station listened to last, special settings.
- Backup camera: selection of functions and type of display.
- Language on the Control Display.
- Lane departure warning: last setting, on/off.
- Triple turn signal activation.
- Locking the vehicle: after a brief period or after starting to drive.

CarManuals2.com

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system becomes active when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors.
- Tailgate.
- Fuel filler flap.

Operating from the outside

- Via the remote control.
- Via the driver's door lock.
- Via the door handles of the driver's and front passenger doors.
- Via the button on the tailgate.

The following takes place simultaneously when locking/unlocking the vehicle via the remote control:

- Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the theft protection is activated/deactivated. Theft protection prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door opener.
- The welcome lamps, interior lamps and courtesy lamps are switched on and off.
- The alarm system, refer to page 41, is armed or disarmed.

Operating from the inside



Via the button for the central locking system.

If the vehicle has been locked from inside, the fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the central locking system unlocks automatically.

The hazard warning system and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: from the outside

Using the remote control

General information

Take the remote control with you

People or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◂

Unlocking

Press the button on the remote control.

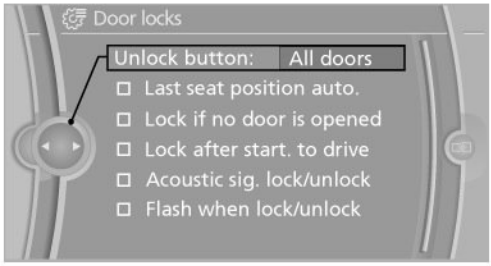
The vehicle is unlocked.

Welcome lamps, interior lamp and courtesy lamps are switched on.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button:"



4. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Convenient opening

The remote control can be used to simultaneously open the windows and the glass sunroof.

Press and hold the button on the remote control.

The windows and the glass sunroof open.

Releasing the button stops the motion.

Locking

Press the button on the remote control.

Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◂

CarManuals2.com

Switching on interior lamps and courtesy lamps

Press the button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching on the headlamp courtesy delay feature

Briefly press the button on the remote control.

The duration can be set.

Opening the tailgate

Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens.

Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

In some vehicle equipment variants, the tailgate can only be opened using the remote control if the vehicle was unlocked first.

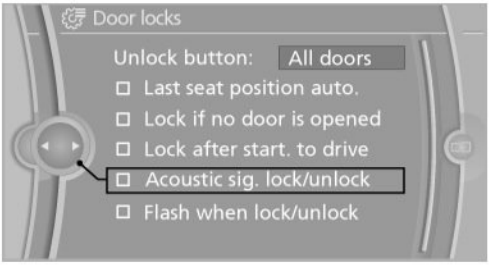
To avoid locking yourself out of the vehicle, do not place the remote control into the cargo area. The tailgate is locked again as soon as it is pushed closed.

Provide edge protection

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heating wires of the rear window. Provide edge protection.◂

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
   - ▷ "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"
   - ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"



Retrieving the seat and mirror settings

The driver's seat and exterior mirror positions used last are stored for the remote control currently in use.

When the vehicle is unlocked, these positions are automatically retrieved if this function was activated.

Pinch hazard when moving back the seat

If this function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty. Otherwise, people can be injured or objects damaged when the seat is moved back.◂

The adjustment procedure is interrupted:

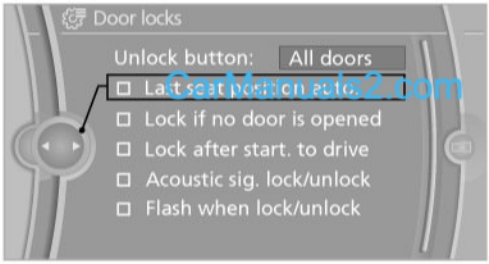
- ▷ When a seat position switch is pressed.
- ▷ When a button of the seat and mirror memory is pressed.

Activating the setting

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"

CarManuals2.com

3. "Last seat position auto."



Malfunction

If the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked with the remote control, the battery may be discharged or there may be interference from external sources such as mobile phones, metal objects, overhead power lines, transmission towers, etc.

If this occurs, unlock or lock the vehicle at the door lock using the integrated key.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- LX8766S.
- LX8766E.
- LX8CAS.
- LX8CAS2.
- MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:

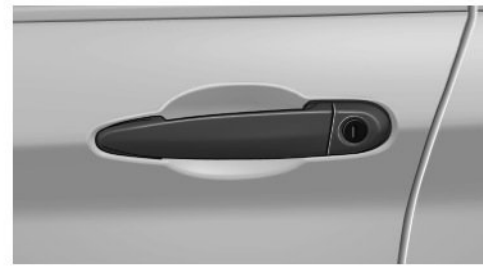
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Using the door lock

General information



Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◄

Remove the key before pulling the door handle

Before pulling the outside door handle, remove the key to avoid damaging the paintwork and the key.◄

In some country-specific versions, the alarm system is triggered if the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control, or switch on the ignition, if necessary, by emergency detection of the remote control.

In some vehicle equipment versions, only the driver's door can be unlocked or locked via the door lock.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Locking the doors and tailgate together

To lock all doors and the tailgate at once:

1. With the doors closed, lock the vehicle using the button for the central locking system in the interior.
2. Unlock and open the driver's or front passenger door.
3. Lock the vehicle.
   - ▷ Lock the driver's door using the integrated key in the door lock, or
   - ▷ Press down the lock button of the front passenger door and close the door from the outside.

The fuel filler flap can only be locked using the remote control.

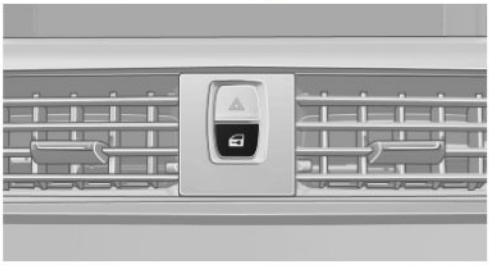
Manual operation

If an electrical malfunction occurs, lock or unlock the vehicle using the integrated key via the door lock on the driver's door.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing: from the inside

Locking and unlocking



Pressing the buttons locks and unlocks the doors and the tailgate when the front doors are closed, but they are not secured against theft.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking and opening

- ▷ Either unlock the doors together using the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ Pull the door opener twice individually on each door: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

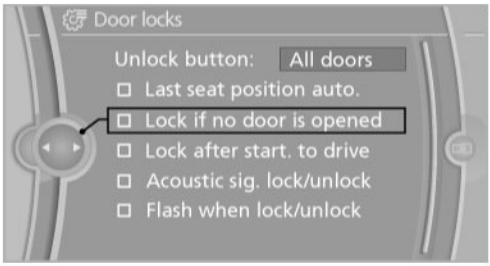
Automatic locking

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if a door is not opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after start. to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive away.



Tailgate

Opening

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

Provide edge protection

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heating wires of the rear window. Provide edge protection.◄

Opening from the outside



▷ Press the button next to the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

Opening from the inside

Push the button in the driver's footwell.

The tailgate is opened if the vehicle is stationary, provided that the tailgate has not been locked.

Closing



Recessed grips on the inside trim of the tailgate can be used to conveniently pull down the tailgate.

CarManuals2.com

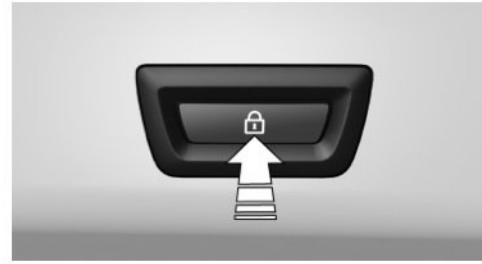
Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.◄

Locking the vehicle



Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

When the driver's door is closed, the vehicle is completely locked.

Automatic tailgate operation

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate should open.

Adjusting the opening height

When adjusting the opening height, ensure that there is a clearance of at least 4 in/10 cm above the tailgate. Otherwise, the ceiling may not be high enough for the open tailgate if the load situation changes.◄

1. "Settings"
2. "Tailgate"
3. Turn the controller until the desired opening height is selected.

Opening

The tailgate opens fully.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490



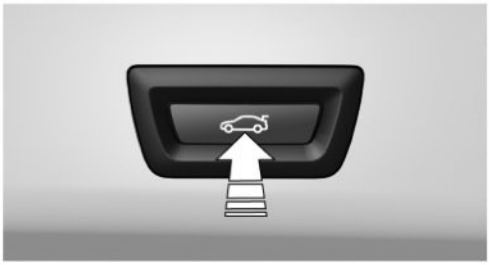
- Press the button on the exterior of the tailgate.
- Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.
- Push the button in the driver's footwell.

Pressing the button again stops the motion.

The opening process is interrupted as well:

- When starting the engine.
- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button in the driver's footwell.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.

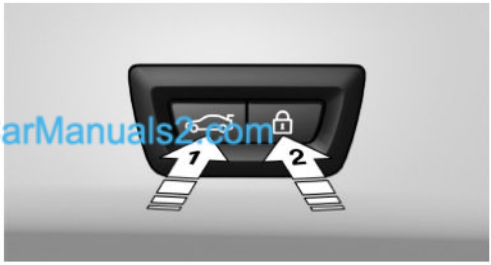
Closing



- Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

  The tailgate closes automatically.

  Pressing again stops the motion.



CarManuals2.com

With Comfort Access:

- Press the button, arrow 1, on the inside of the tailgate.

  The tailgate closes automatically.

  Pressing again stops the motion.
- Press the button, arrow 2.

  Tailgate closes automatically and the vehicle is locked.



- Press the button on the exterior of the tailgate.

  Pressing again stops the motion.

The closing operation is interrupted:

- When starting the engine.
- The vehicle starts off with jerks.

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote

control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.◄

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

Comfort Access

The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, e.g., in your jacket pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is nearby or in the passenger compartment.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
- Unlocking of the tailgate separately.
- Starting the engine.

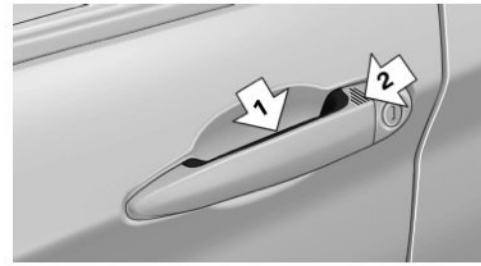
Functional requirements

- There are no external sources of interference nearby.
- To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the remote control is inside the vehicle.

Comparison with ordinary remote control

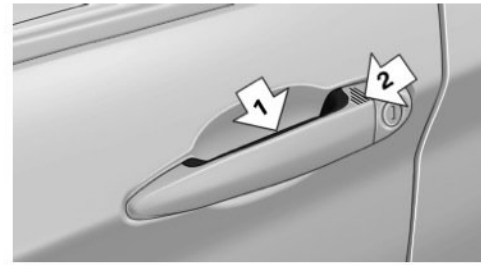
The functions can be controlled by pressing the buttons of the remote control or Comfort Access.

Unlocking



Grasp the door handle on the driver's or front passenger door completely, arrow 1. This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

Locking



Press the area on the door handle, arrow 2, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

To save battery power, ensure that the ignition and all electronic systems and/or power consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.

Convenient closing

Press the area on the door handle, arrow 2, with the finger and hold it down.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof are closed.

CarManuals2.com

Monitor the closing process

Monitor the closing process to ensure that no one becomes trapped.◄

Unlocking the tailgate separately

Press the button on the exterior of the tailgate.

This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.◄

Malfunction

Comfort Access may not function properly if it experiences interference from external sources such as mobile phones, metal objects, overhead power lines, transmission towers, etc.

In this case, open or close the vehicle using the buttons on the remote control or use the integrated key in the door lock.

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds to:

- Opening of a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- Movements in the vehicle.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, e.g., during attempts to steal a wheel or when towing the car.
- Interruptions in battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly indicates tampering:

- By sounding an acoustic alarm.
- By switching on the hazard warning system.
- By flashing the high beams.

Arming and disarming the alarm system

General information

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control, Comfort Access or at the door lock the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

Door lock and armed alarm system

Unlocking via the door lock will trigger the alarm on some country-specific versions.

In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if necessary, by emergency detection of the remote control.

Tailgate and armed alarm system

The tailgate can be opened using the remote control, even if the alarm system is armed.

Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again by the alarm system. The hazard warning system flashes once.

In some vehicle equipment variants, the tailgate can only be opened using the remote control if the vehicle was unlocked first.

Panic mode

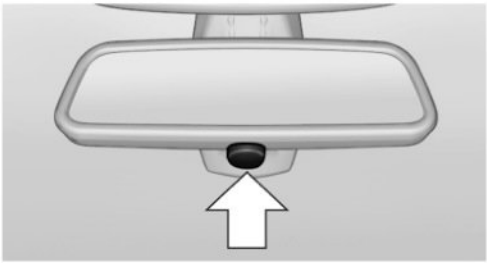
Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle using the remote control.
- With Comfort Access: if you are carrying the remote control with you, pull on the door handle.

CarManuals2.com

Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror



- The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking:

  The doors, hood or tailgate is not closed properly, but the rest of the vehicle is secured.

  After 10 seconds, the indicator lamp flashes continuously. Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine is started, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the car is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

- In automatic car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on car-carrying trains, at sea or on a trailer.
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Power windows

General information

Take the remote control with you

CarManuals2.com

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the power windows and injure themselves.◄



Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is held.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

▷  Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window opens automatically.

Pressing again stops the motion.

Convenient opening, refer to page 34, via the remote control.

Closing

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◂

▷  Pull the switch to the resistance point.

The window closes while the switch is held.

▷  Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically.

Pressing the switch stops the motion.

CarManuals2.com

Convenient operation, refer to page 34, via the remote control.

Convenient closing, refer to page 40, with Comfort Access.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.

Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Even with the pinch protection system, check that the window's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not stop in certain situations, e.g., if thin objects are present.◂

No window accessories

Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows; otherwise, the pinch protection system will be impaired.◂

Closing without the pinch protection system

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◂

For example, if there is an external danger or if ice on the windows prevents a window from closing normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without pinch protection.

Safety switch

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for example, from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

Switching on and off

 Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Safety switch for rear operation

Press the safety switch when transporting children in the rear; otherwise, injury may result if the windows are closed without supervision.◂

Roller sunblinds

Roller sunblinds for the rear side windows

CarManuals2.com

Pull out the roller sunblind at the loop and hook it onto the bracket.

Do not open the window while the roller sunblind is raised.

Do not open the window while the roller sunblind is raised; otherwise, there is a risk of damage at high speeds that may result in personal injury.◄

Panoramic glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sliding visor can be operated together or separately, using the same switch.

The glass sunroof is operational when the ignition is switched on.

Danger of pinching

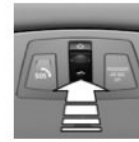
Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the roof and injure themselves.◄



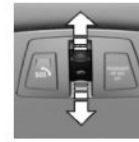
Tilting the glass sunroof



Push switch upward briefly.

- ▷ The closed roof is tilted and the sliding visor opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened roof closes until it is in its tilted position. The sliding visor stays completely open.

Opening/closing the sliding visor



- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

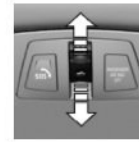
  The sliding visor moves while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

  The sliding visor moves automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof

When the sliding visor is open, proceed as described under Sliding visor.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor together



Briefly press the switch twice in succession in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sliding visor move together. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Convenient operation, refer to page 34, via the remote control.

Convenient closing, refer to page 40, with Comfort Access.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Comfort position

In the comfort position, the roof is not fully open. This reduces wind noise in the passenger compartment.

Every time the glass sunroof is opened or closed completely, it stops in the comfort position. If desired, continue the movement by pressing the switch.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force when closing the glass sunroof exceeds a certain value, the closing movement is stopped, beginning at approximately the middle of the opening in the roof, or from the tilted position during closing.

The glass sunroof opens again slightly.

Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Despite the pinch protection system, check that the roof's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not be interrupted in certain extreme situations, such as when thin objects are present.◄

Closing without the pinch protection system

For example, if there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold.

   Pinch protection is limited and the roof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Press the switch forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the roof closes without pinch protection.

Initializing after a power failure

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the roof can only be operated to a limited extent.

Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialization, the roof closes without pinch protection.

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄



Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

- ▷ Initialization begins within 15 seconds and is completed when the sunroof and sliding visor are completely closed.
- ▷ The roof closes without pinch protection.

CarManuals2.com

Adjusting

Vehicle equipment

CarManuals2.com

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Sitting safely

The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

- Safety belts, refer to page 49.
- Head restraints, refer to page 50.
- Airbags, refer to page 90.

Seats

General information

Do not adjust the seat while driving

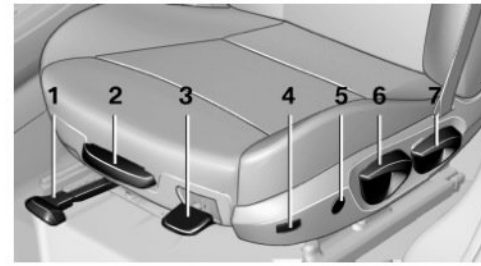
Do not adjust the driver's seat while driving, or the seat could respond with unexpected movement and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.◄

Do not incline the backrest too far to the rear

Also on the front passenger side, do not incline the backrest on the front passenger side too far to the rear during driving, or there is a risk of slipping under the safety belt in the event of an accident. This would eliminate the protection normally provided by the belt.◄

Manually adjustable seats

At a glance



1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Seat tilt
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest tilt

Forward/backward

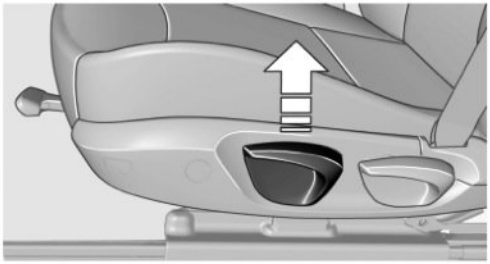


Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly to make sure it engages properly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Height



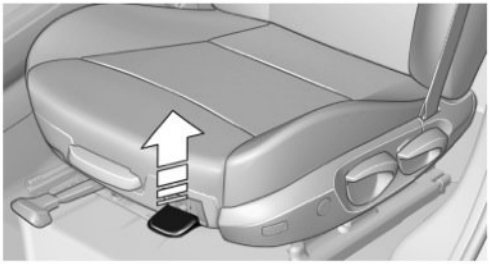
Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Backrest tilt



Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Seat tilt



Pull the lever and move the seat to the desired tilt. After releasing the lever, apply your weight to the seat or lift it off to make sure the seat engages properly.

Electrically adjustable seats

At a glance



1 Backrest width
2 Lumbar support
3 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
4 Backrest tilt
5 Seat and mirror memory for driver's seat

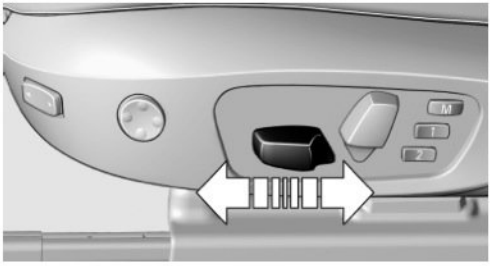
Note

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored for the remote control currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 35, is activated for this purpose.

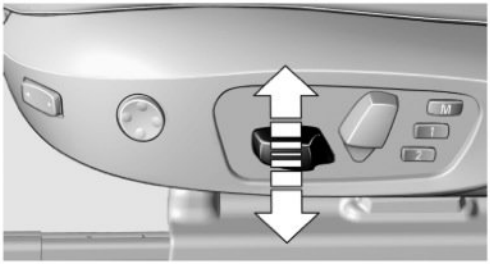
CarManuals2.com

Adjustments in detail

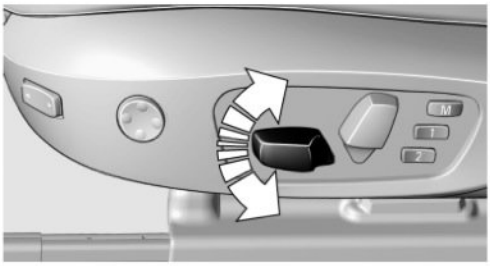
1. Forward/back.



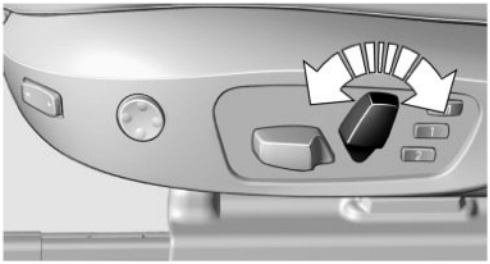
2. Height.



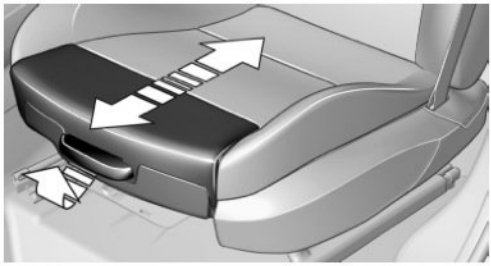
3. Seat tilt.



4. Backrest tilt.



Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in such a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.



- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the switch.

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the switch.

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width



Change the width of the backrest using the side wings to adjust the lateral support.

CarManuals2.com

Front seat heating



Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the drive is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Switching off

Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Rear seat heating



Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

CarManuals2.com

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the drive is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Switching off

Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Safety belts

Seats with safety belt

The vehicle has five seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

Number of safety belts

Your vehicle has been fitted with five safety belts for the safety of you and your passengers. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Notes

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving away.

Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

- The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.
- The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.
- The center rear seat belt buckle is solely intended for the center passenger.

One person per safety belt

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride on a passenger's lap.◂

Putting on the belt

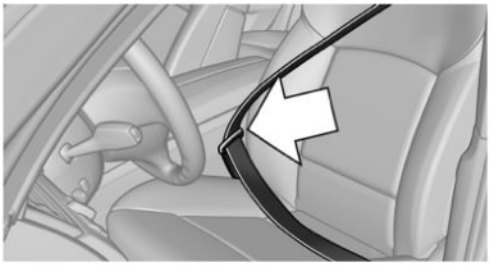
Lay the belt, without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen.

The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects, or be pinched.◄

Reduction of restraining effect

Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly, and pull the shoulder belt periodically to readjust the tension across your lap; otherwise, the retention effect of the safety belt may be reduced.◄

Buckling the belt



Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its reel.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

The indicator lamp flashes or lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Damage to safety belts

In the case of strain caused by accidents or damage:

Have the safety belts, including the safety belt tensioners, replaced and have the belt anchors checked.

Checking and replacing safety belts

Have the work performed only by your service center; otherwise, it cannot be ensured that this safety feature will function properly.◄

Front head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Adjusting the head restraint

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◄

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.

Active head restraint

CarManuals2.com

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

Reduced protective function

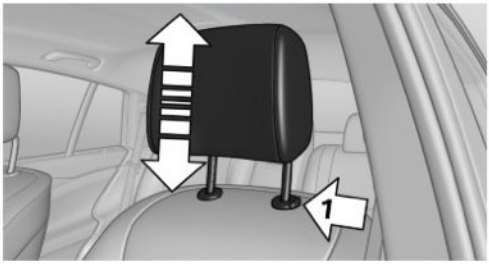
- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.

- Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, on the head restraints.
- Only attach accessories approved by BMW to the seat or head restraint.

Otherwise, the protective function of the active head restraint will be impaired and the personal safety of the occupants will be endangered.◂

CarManuals2.com

Adjusting the height



- To raise: pull.
- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

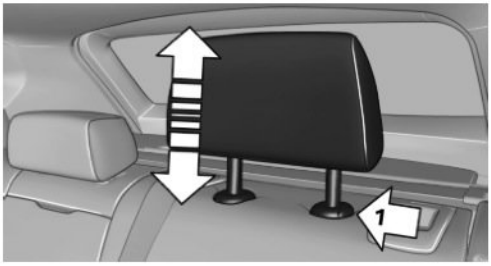
Adjusting the head restraint

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◂

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Adjusting the height

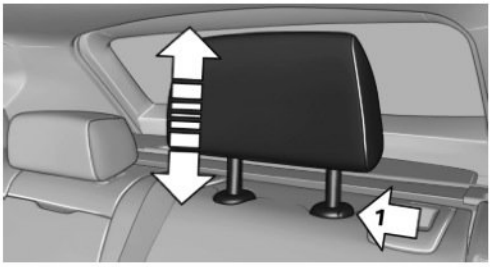


- To raise: pull.
- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

The center head restraint cannot be adjusted in elevation.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Pull the head restraint upward as far as possible.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Before transporting passengers

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the seat; otherwise, the protective function of the head restraint is unavailable.◂

Seat and mirror memory

General information



Two different driver's seat and exterior mirror positions can be stored and retrieved for each remote control. Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored in memory.

Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. M Press the button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired button 1 or 2. The LED goes out.

If the M button is pressed accidentally:

M Press the button again.
The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

⚠ Do not retrieve the memory while driving

Do not retrieve the memory setting while driving, as an unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel could result in an accident.◂

Comfort function

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Briefly press the desired button 1 or 2.

The corresponding seat position is performed automatically.

The procedure stops when a switch for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

Safety mode

1. Close the driver's door or switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the desired button 1 or 2 until the adjustment procedure is completed.

Calling up of a seat position deactivated

After a brief period, the calling up of stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

- ▷ Open or close the door or tailgate.
- ▷ Press a button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

At a glance



1 Adjusting
2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Fold in and out

General information

CarManuals2.com

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Estimating distances correctly

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the traffic behind you based on what you see in the mirror, as this will increase your risk of an accident.◄

CarManuals2.com

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the mirror setting is stored for the remote control in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the setting for this function is active.

Selecting a mirror



To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the mirror changeover switch.

Adjusting electrically



The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

Saving positions

Seat and mirror memory, refer to page 52

Adjusting manually

If an electrical malfunction occurs, for example, press the edges of the mirror glass.

Automatic Curb Monitor

When the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass tilts downward slightly on the front passenger side. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

Activating

1.  Slide the mirror changeover switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage transmission position R.

Deactivating

Slide the mirror changeover switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Fold in and out



Press the button.

Possible up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

For example, this is advantageous

- In car washes.
- In narrow streets.
- For folding back mirrors that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Fold in the mirror in a car wash

Before entering an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with the button; otherwise, they could be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.◄

Automatic heating

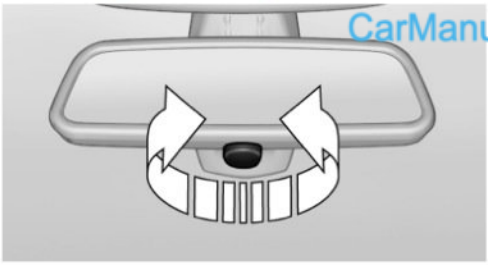
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature

Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells are used for control in the Interior rear view mirror, refer to page 54.

Interior rearview mirror

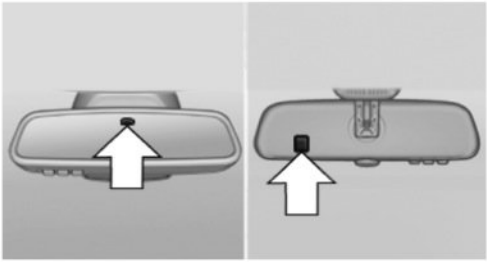
Reducing the blinding effect



From behind when driving at night: turn the knob.

Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature

The concept



Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirement

For proper operation:

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

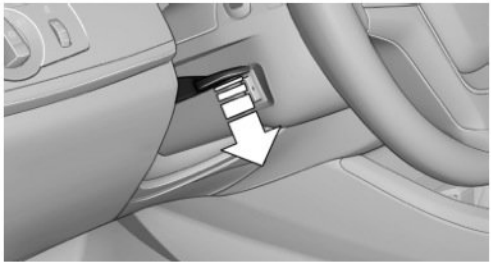
Steering wheel

General information

Do not adjust while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving; otherwise, an unexpected movement could result in an accident.◂

Adjusting



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back.

Steering wheel heating



Switching on/off

Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Transporting children safely

Vehicle equipment

CarManuals2.com

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The right place for children

Note

Children in the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors.◄

Children should always be in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.

Transporting children in the rear

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm in the rear in child restraint fixing systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint fixing system can no longer be used, due to their age, weight and size.◄

Children on the front passenger seat

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 92.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags

If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.◄

Installing child restraint fixing systems

Before mounting

Before mounting child restraint fixing systems, ensure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

Notes

Manufacturer's information for child restraint fixing systems

To select, mount and use child restraint fixing systems, observe the information provided by the system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be impaired.◄

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

After installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 92.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags

If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is

an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.◄

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint fixing system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest position to obtain the best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

Do not change the seat position and height after this.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Backrest width for the child seat

Before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, the backrest width must be opened completely. Do not change the adjustment after this; otherwise, the stability of the child seat will be reduced.◄

Child seat security



The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be locked against pulling out for mounting the child restraint fixing systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
2. Secure the child restraint fixing system with the belt.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull it taut against the child restraint fixing system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint fixing system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Note

Manufacturer's information for LATCH child restraint fixing systems

CarManuals2.com

To mount and use the LATCH child restraint fixing systems, observe the operating and safety information from the system manufacturer; otherwise, the level of protection may be reduced.◄

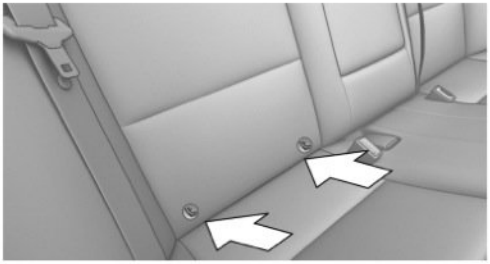
Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

Correctly engage the lower LATCH anchors

Make sure that the lower LATCH anchors have properly engaged and that the child restraint fixing system is resting snugly against the backrest; otherwise, the degree of protection offered may be reduced.◄

Before mounting the LATCH child restraint fixing system, pull the belt away from the child restraint fixing system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490



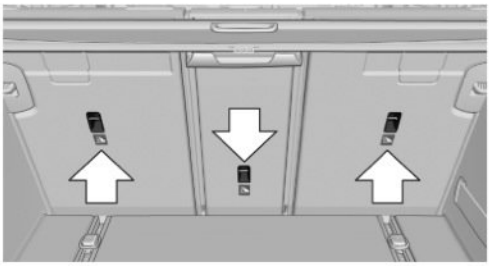
Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located in the gap between the seat and backrest.

Mounting LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Mount the child restraint fixing system; refer to the operating instructions of the system.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

Mounting points



There are three mounting points for the upper retaining strap of LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

LATCH mounting eyes

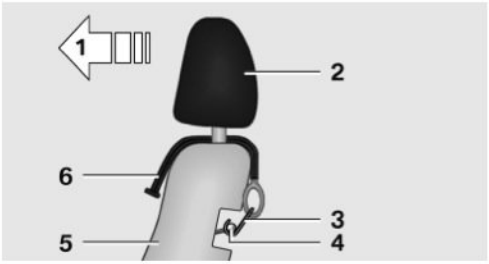
Only use the mounting eyes for the upper LATCH retaining strap to secure child restraint fixing systems; otherwise, the mounting eyes could be damaged.◂

CarManuals2.com

Retaining strap guide

Retaining strap

Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed over the head restraints or sharp edges and is free of twisting on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt cannot properly secure the child restraint fixing system in an accident.◂



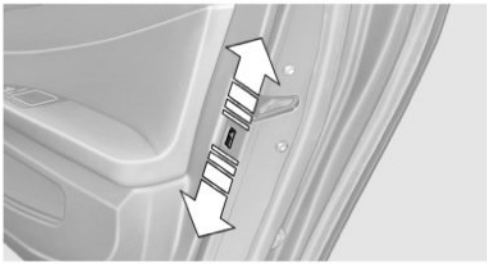
1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint.
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point/eye
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise or remove head restraints as needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting eye.
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
5. Lower and lock head restraints as needed.

Locking the doors and windows

Rear doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors down.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear



Press the button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 43.

CarManuals2.com

Driving

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Start/Stop button

The concept



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Automatic transmission: The engine starts if the brake is depressed while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Ignition on

Automatic transmission: Press the Start/Stop button but do not depress the brake.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster light up for varying lengths of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

The ignition switches off automatically:

- When the vehicle is locked, if the low beams are switched on.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.
- If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off or the daytime running lights are switched on.

Ignition off

Automatic transmission: Press the Start/Stop button again, but do not depress the brake.

All indicator lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

⚠ Transmission position P with the ignition off

When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◀

Ignition automatically cuts off while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is stopped:

- During locking, also with the low beams activated.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are switched off.
- When opening and closing the driver door, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the low beams are switched off.
- While the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, if the driver's door is open and the low beams are switched off.

When the ignition is switched off, by opening or closing the driver's door or unbuckling the driver's seat belt, the radio ready state remains active.

CarManuals2.com

Radio ready state

Activate radio ready state:

- When the ignition is switched off: press ON/OFF button on the radio.
- When the engine is running: press the Start/Stop button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

Radio ready state switches off automatically:

- After approx. 8 minutes.
- When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

Starting the engine

Automatic transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Engine stop

General information

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot start the engine.◄

Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◄

Before driving into a car wash

In order for the vehicle to be able to roll into a car wash, heed the information regarding Washing in automatic car washes, refer to page 265.

CarManuals2.com

Automatic transmission

Switching off the engine

1. Engage transmission position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, e.g., in a traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts again automatically for driving off.

Certain vehicle components may experience additional wear as a result of this system.

Automatic mode

The Auto Start/Stop function is operational after each engine start.

The function is activated above a certain speed.

- Automatic transmission: from 5 mph, approx. 9 km/h.

Engine stop

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:

- Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Automatic transmission:

- The selector lever is in transmission position D.
- The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

The air flow of the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.



The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been satisfied.

Note

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- External temperature below approx. +37 °F/+3 °C.
- The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The passenger compartment has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- After driving in reverse.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
- HDC is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- The transmission selector lever is in position N or S/M.

Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- Automatic transmission:

  By releasing the brake pedal.

  When Automatic Hold is activated: press the accelerator.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met.

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- The hood was unlocked.

CarManuals2.com

Some indicator lamps light up for varying lengths of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

Note

Even if driving away was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the passenger compartment when the cooling function is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Automatic transmission: the transmission position is changed from D to N, R, or M/S.
- Automatic transmission: the transmission position is changed from P to N, D, R, or M/S.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.

- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- Excessive cooling of the passenger compartment when the heating is switched on.

Preventing an automatic engine stop with automatic transmission

The concept

To make it possible to drive away very quickly, such as at an intersection, the automatic engine stop can be actively prevented.

Preventing an engine stop using the brake pedal

The engine stop can be actively prevented within one second after the vehicle comes to a standstill.

- Immediately after the vehicle comes to a standstill, briefly press the brake pedal forcefully.
- Then press the brake pedal with normal braking force.

Activating/deactivating the system manually

Using the button



Press the button.

- LED comes on: Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.

  The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

  The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- LED goes out: Auto Start Stop function is activated.

CarManuals2.com

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e.g., when leaving it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

   Automatic transmission: the transmission position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Automatic Engine Start/Stop Function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, such as when the driver is detected to be absent.

Malfunction

The automatic engine start/stop function no longer switches of the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

Parking brake

The concept

The parking brake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490



Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◄

While driving

Use while driving serves as an emergency braking function:

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the button is being pulled.

PARK The indicator lamp lights up red, a signal sounds and the brake lamps light up.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models.

If the vehicle is braked to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h, the parking brake remains set.

Releasing

With the ignition switched on:

Automatic transmission: Press the switch while the brake is pressed or transmission position P is engaged.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

The parking brake is released.

Automatic Release in cars with automatic transmission

For automatic release, operate the accelerator pedal.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

Subject to the following requirements, the parking brake is automatically released by operation of the accelerator pedal:

- Engine on.
- Drive position engaged.
- Driver buckled in and doors closed.

Inadvertent operation of the accelerator pedal

Make sure that the accelerator pedal is not operated unintentionally; otherwise, the vehicle is set in motion and there is a risk of an accident.◄

CarManuals2.com

Automatic Hold

The concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On inclines, the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving away.



CarManuals2.com

For your safety

Under the following conditions, Automatic Hold is automatically deactivated and the parking brake is set:

- The engine is switched off.
- A door is opened and driver's safety belt is unbuckled while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

PARK The indicator lamp switches from green to red and the letters AUTO H go out.

(P) Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models.

Before driving away:

- Release the parking brake manually.
- Reactivate Automatic Hold.

⚠ Leaving the vehicle with the engine running

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and ensure that the parking brake is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.◄

Activating

This function can be activated when the driver's door is closed and the safety belt is fastened, and while driving.

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED and the letters AUTO H light up.

AUTO H The indicator lamp lights up.

Automatic Hold is activated.

Deactivating

AUTO H Press the button again.

The LED and the letters AUTO H go out.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press on the brake pedal to deactivate it.

When the parking brake is set manually, Automatic Hold is deactivated automatically.

Driving

Automatic Hold is activated: the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling when it stops.

PARK The indicator lamp lights up green.

Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

(P) The brake is released automatically.

The indicator lamp goes out.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

⚠ Before driving into a car wash

Deactivate Automatic Hold; otherwise, the parking brake will be set when the vehicle is stationary and the vehicle will no longer be able to roll.◄

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold.

PARK The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

(P) The parking brake is not set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Automatic Hold remains activated during an engine stop brought about by the Auto Start/Stop function.

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot release the parking brake.◄

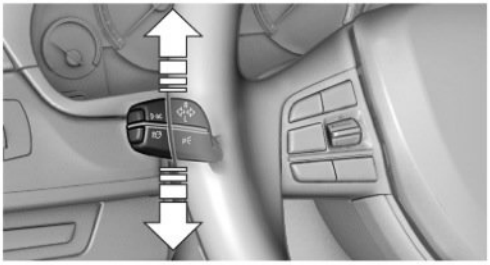
Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for example, when leaving it.

Turn signal, high beams, headlamp flasher

Turn signal

Using turn signals



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To switch off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

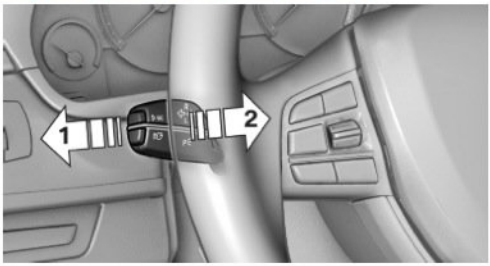


CarManuals2.com

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlamp flasher



- ▷ High beams, arrow 1.
- ▷ Headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

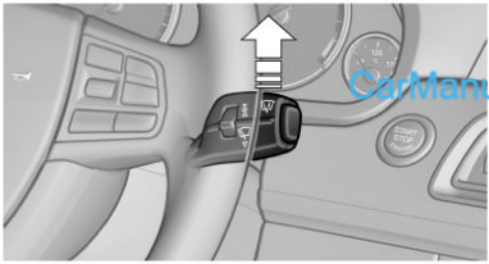
Washer/wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

Do not switch on the wipers if frozen

Do not switch on the wipers if they are frozen onto the windshield; otherwise, the wiper blades and the windshield wiper motor may be damaged.◄

Switching on



Press the wiper levers up.

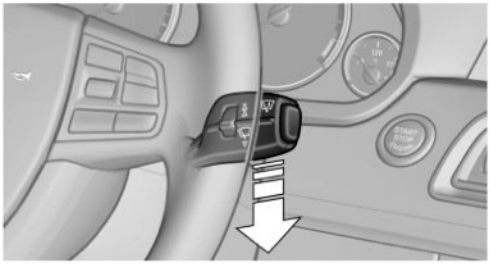
The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- Normal wiping speed: press up once.

  The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- Fast wiping speed: press up twice or press once beyond the resistance point.

  The wipers switch to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the wiper levers down.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- Brief wipe: press down once.
- To switch off normal wipe: press down once.
- To switch off fast wipe: press down twice.

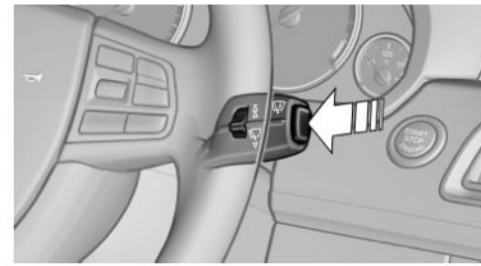
Intermittent operation or rain sensor

The concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly behind the interior rearview mirror.

CarManuals2.com

Activating/deactivating



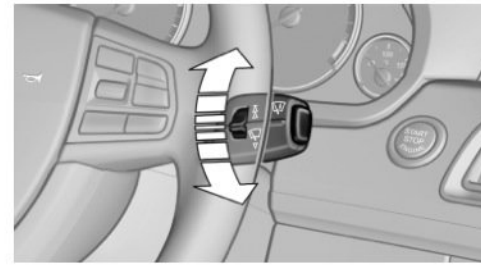
Press the button on the wiper lever.

The LED in the steering column stalk lights up.

Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash; otherwise, damage could be caused by undesired wiper activation.◄

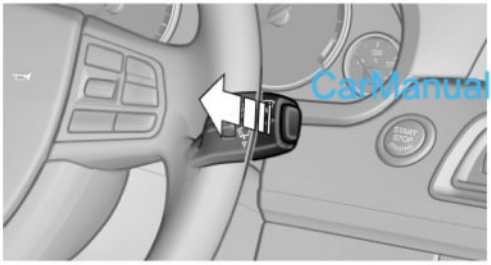
Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the thumbwheel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Clean the windshield, headlamps



Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlamps are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle lights are switched on.

Do not use the washer system at freezing temperatures

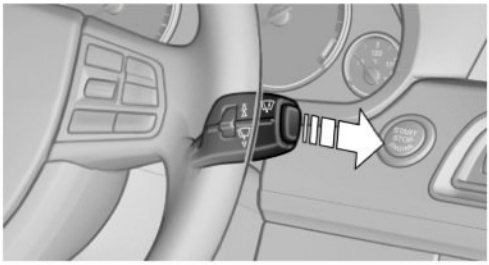
Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield; otherwise, your vision could be obscured. For this reason, use antifreeze.

Avoid using the washer when the reservoir is empty; otherwise, you could damage the pump.◄

Windshield washer nozzles

The washer jets are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Switching on the rear window wiper



Press the lever forward: intermittent wipe. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

To clean the rear window, press the lever further forward.

CarManuals2.com

Fold-out position of the wipers

Required when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for example.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Under frosty conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen onto the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

Fold the wipers back down

Before switching the ignition on, fold the wipers back down to the windshield; otherwise, the wipers may become damaged when they are switched on.◄

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the wiper levers down. The wipers move to their resting position and are ready for operation.

Washer fluid

General information

Antifreeze for washer fluid

Antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from sources of ignition.

Only keep it in the closed original container and inaccessible to children.

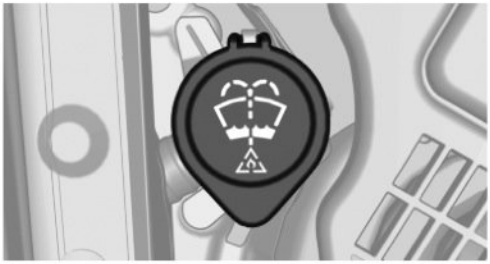
Follow the instructions on the container.◄

Washer fluid reservoir

Adding washer fluid

Only add washer fluid when the engine is cool, and then close the cover completely to avoid contact between the washer fluid and hot engine parts.

Otherwise, there is the danger of fire and a risk to personal safety if the fluid is spilled.◂



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the washer fluid before adding to maintain the correct mixing ratio.

For the capacity, refer to technical data.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic

Transmission positions

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.

R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

Use in automatic car washes, for example. The vehicle can roll.

When the ignition is switched off, refer to page 59, position P is engaged automatically.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.

P is engaged automatically:

- After the engine is switched off, if the car is in radio ready state, refer to page 59, or if the ignition is switched off, refer to page 59, and if position R or D is engaged.
- With the ignition is off, if position N is engaged.
- If the safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and transmission position R or D is engaged.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that position P of the automatic transmission is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.

Kickdown

CarManuals2.com

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Press on the gas pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Engaging the transmission position

- Transmission position P can only be disengaged if the engine is running and the brake pedal is pressed.
- With the vehicle stationary, press on the brake pedal before shifting out of P or N; otherwise, the shift command will not be executed: shift lock.

  Depress the brake until you start driving

  To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.◂

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Engaging D, R and N



Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary.

After releasing the selector lever, it returns to its center position.



Press unlock button, in order to:

- Engage R.
- Shift out of P.

Engaging P



Press button P.

Sport program DS and manual mode M/S

Activating sport program DS



Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.

DS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Activating the M/S manual mode

Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.

CarManuals2.com

Push the selector lever forward or backward.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., M1.

- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The vehicle only shifts up or down at appropriate engine and road speeds, e.g., it does not shift down if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Manual mode M/S: prevent automatic upshifting

Once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

For vehicles with Sport automatic transmissions, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:

- DSC deactivated.
- TRACTION activated.
- SPORT+ activated.

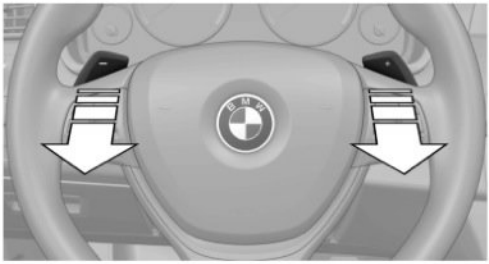
In addition, the kickdown is deactivated.

Ending the sport program/manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles for Sport automatic transmission



The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

If the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission temporarily switches to manual mode.

If the shift paddles are not used and the vehicle is not accelerated for a certain time, the system switches back into automatic mode if the selector lever is in transmission position D.

- Shift up: pull right shift paddle.
- Shift down: pull left shift paddle.

The vehicle only shifts up or down at appropriate engine and road speeds, e.g., it does not shift down if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The transmission position is displayed, e.g.: P.

CarManuals2.com

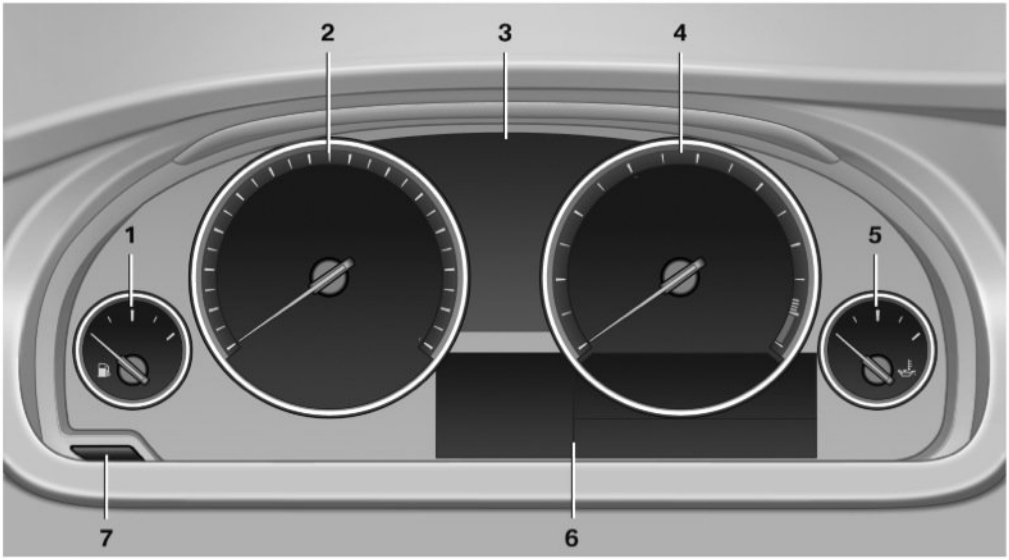
Displays

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Instrument cluster

At a glance

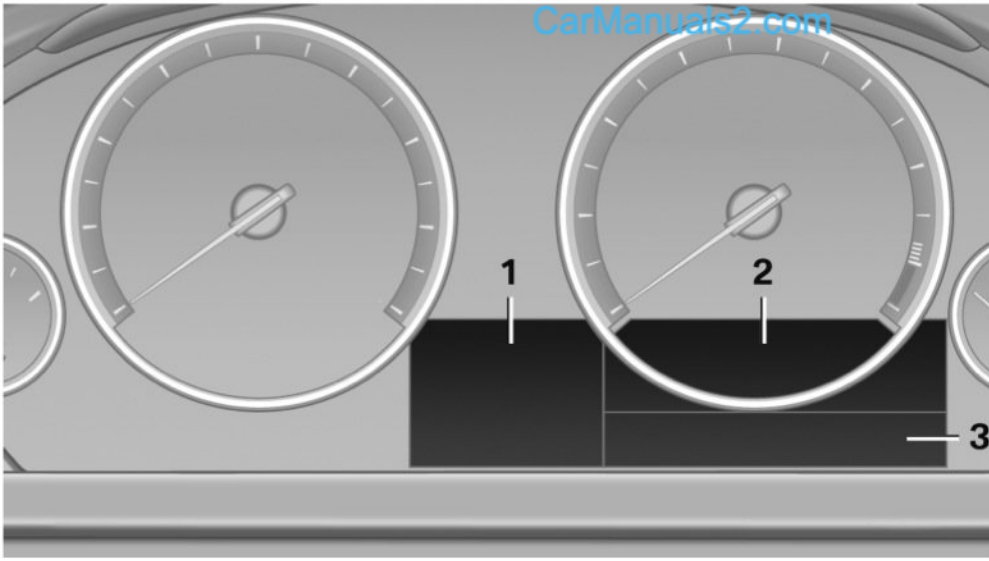


1 Fuel gauge 75
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator/warning lamps 73
4 Tachometer 75
5 Engine oil temperature 75
6 Electronic displays 72
7 Reset miles 76

CarManuals2.com

Electronic displays

With the Professional navigation system



CarManuals2.com

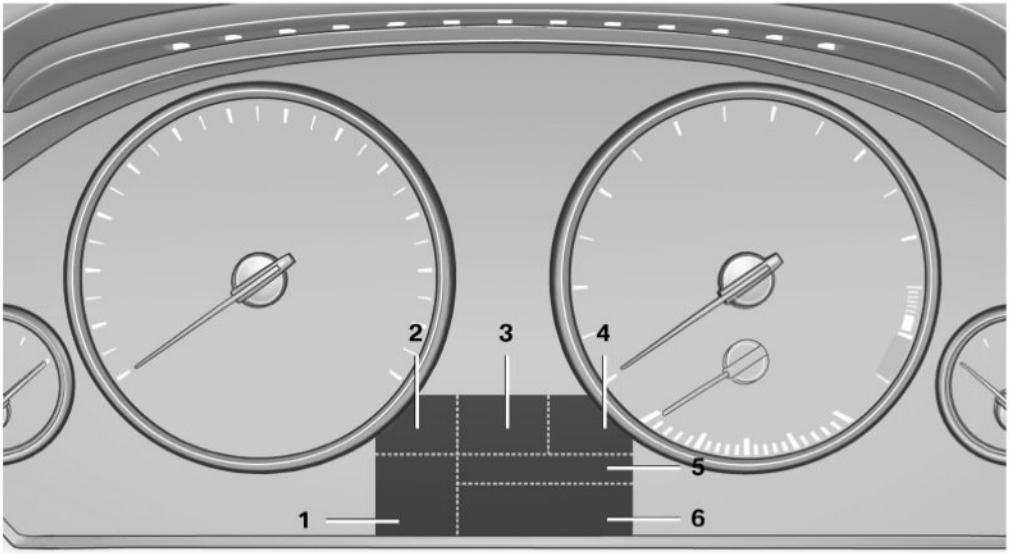
1 Selection list, such as for the radio 80
Navigation display 150
Speed limit detection 78
Computer 80

2 Transmission displays 70

3 Service requirements 77
Messages, e.g. Check Control 73

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

With the Business navigation system or no navigation



1 Clock 76
External temperature 76
2 Messages, e.g. Check Control 73
3 Transmission displays 70
4 Selection lists, e. g. Dynamic Driving Control 80
5 Computer 80
6 Service requirements 77

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lamps and text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

Indicator/warning lamps



The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Overview: indicator/warning lamps

Symbol	Function or system
	Turn signal
	Parking brake
	Parking brake in Canadian models
	Automatic Hold
	Front fog lamps
	High beams
	High-beam Assistant
	Parking lamps, headlamp control
	Lane departure warning
	DSC Dynamic Stability Control
	DSC Dynamic Stability Control or DTC Dynamic Traction Control
	Tire Pressure Monitor Flat Tire Monitor
	Safety belts
	Airbag system

Symbol	Function or system
	Steering system
	Emissions
	Emissions in Canadian models
	Brake system
	Brake system in Canadian models
	ABS Antilock Brake System
	ABS Antilock Brake System in Canadian models
	At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored

CarManuals2.com

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps.

Supplementary text messages

Addition information, such as on the cause of a fault or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

The supplementary text of urgent messages is automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Symbols

Within the supplementary text, the following functions can be selected independent of the check control message.

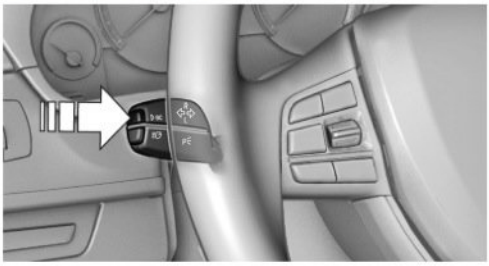
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

- Display additional information about the Check Control message in the integrated owner's manual.
- "Service request"

  Contact the service partner.
- "Roadside Assistance"

  Contact Roadside Assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the computer button on the turn signal lever.

- Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

  These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.
- Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

Messages after trip completion

Special messages that are displayed during driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

Fuel gauge



The vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Notes on refueling, refer to page 234.

Tachometer



Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

CarManuals2.com

Engine oil temperature



- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high temperature end. A Check Control message is displayed in addition.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 250.

Odometer and trip odometer



- Odometer, arrow 1.
- Trip odometer, arrow 2.

Resetting the trip odometer



Press the knob.

- The odometer is displayed when the ignition is switched off.
- When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

External temperature

External temperature warning



If the display drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is the increased danger of ice.

Ice on roads

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C, there can be a risk of ice on roads.

Therefore, drive carefully on bridges and shady roads, for example, to avoid the increased danger of an accident.◄

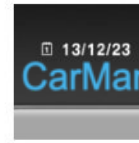
Time



The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time on the Control Display, refer to page 82.

Date

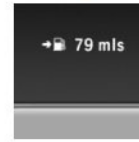


The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Set the date on the Control Display, refer to page 83.

CarManuals2.com

Range



After the reserve range is reached:

- A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- The remaining range is shown on the onboard computer.
- When a dynamic driving style is used, such as when cornering quickly, operation of the engine is not always ensured.

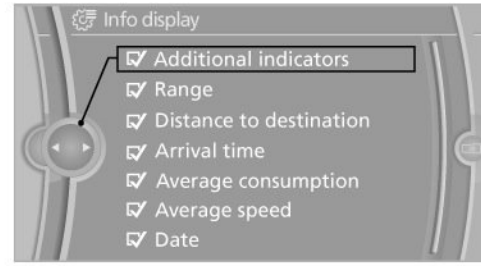
The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Refuel promptly

Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/50 km, or operation of the engine is not ensured and damage may occur.◄

Displaying the cruising range

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"



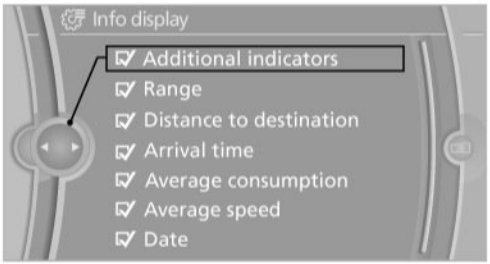
Current fuel consumption



Displays the current fuel consumption. You can check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"



The bar display for the current fuel consumption is displayed in the instrument cluster.

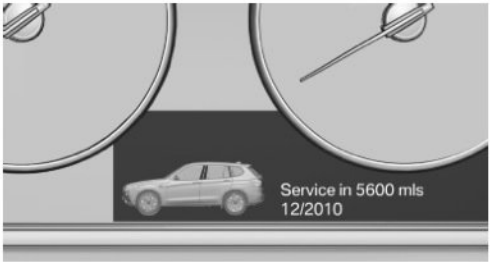
Energy recovery



The energy of motion of the vehicle is converted to electrical energy while coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be lowered.

Service requirements

Display



The driving distance or the time to the next scheduled maintenance is displayed briefly after the ignition is switched on.

The current service requirements can be read out from the remote control by the service specialist.

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date, Automatic Service Request, refer to page 225.

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

CarManuals2.com

Symbols

Symbols	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

CarManuals2.com

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the required inspections.

Ensure that the vehicle date and time are set correctly.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Create the settings.
7. Confirm.

   The entered date is stored.

Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date.

You can check when your service center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Speed limit detection with No Passing Information

The concept

Speed limit detection

Speed limit detection uses a symbol in the shape of a traffic sign to display the currently detected speed limit. The camera at the base of the interior rearview mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc. are also detected and compared with vehicle interior data, such as for the rain sensor, and are displayed depending on the situation. The system takes into account the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

No Passing Information

No Passing Information displays in the instrument cluster the beginnings and ends of no passing zones detected by the camera. The system accounts for only the beginnings and ends of No Passing zones marked by signs.

No display is shown:

- In countries where No Passing zones are primarily identified with road markings.
- On routes without signage.
- Where there are railroad crossings, highway markings or other situations where no signage is present, but passing would not be permitted.

Switching on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Speed limit information"

If speed limit detection is switched on, it can be displayed on the info display in the instrument cluster via the onboard computer. No Passing

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Information is displayed together with activated speed limit information.

Display

The following is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Speed limit detection



- Current speed limit.
- No speed limit - for the German autobahn.
- Speed limit detection is not available.

Speed limit detection can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

No Passing Information



- Start of No Passing zone.
- End of No Passing zone.
- No Passing Information not available.

CarManuals2.com

No Passing Information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

Personal judgment

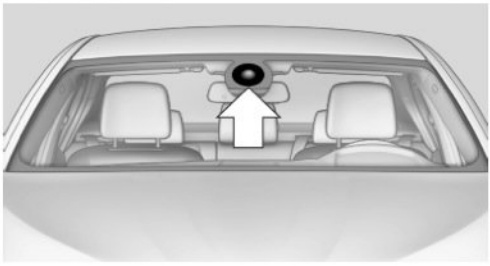
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

The system assists the driver and does not replace the human eye.◂

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- When signs are concealed by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights.
- When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, e.g. due to changes in the road network.
- When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Camera



The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep windshield clean and clear in the area in front of the interior rear view mirror.

Selection lists in the instrument cluster

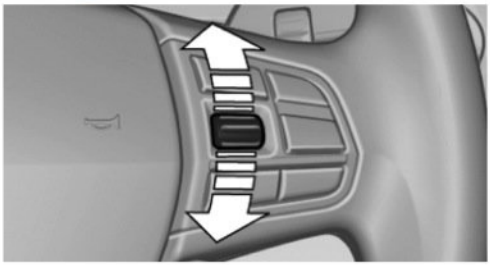
The concept



The following can be operated using the buttons and the thumbwheel on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster:

- Current audio source.
- Redial on telephone.
- Activation of the voice activation system.

Activating a list and adjusting the setting



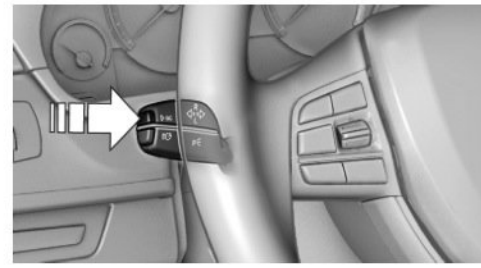
On the right side of the steering wheel, turn the thumbwheel to activate the corresponding list.

Using the thumbwheel, select the desired setting and confirm it by pressing the thumbwheel.

CarManuals2.com

Computer

Calling up information on the info display

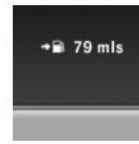


Press the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

Information is displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

Info display



Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information on the info display:

- Range.
- ECO PRO bonus range.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Date.
- Time of arrival.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- Distance to destination.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- Arrow view of navigation system.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

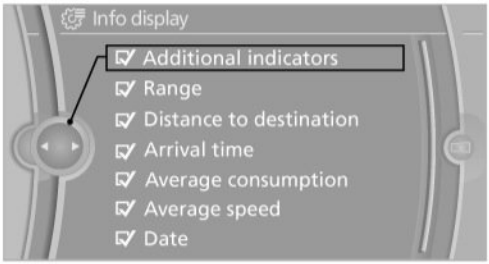
When the arrow view in the Head-up Display is inactive.

Adjusting the info display

CarManuals2.com

You can select what information from the computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. Select the desired displays.



Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

Average fuel consumption

This is calculated for the period during which the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated on the basis of various distances.

Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped do not enter into the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values

Press and hold the computer button on the turn signal lever.

Distance to destination

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

Time of arrival



The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

Speed limit detection

Description of the speed limit detection, refer to page 78, function

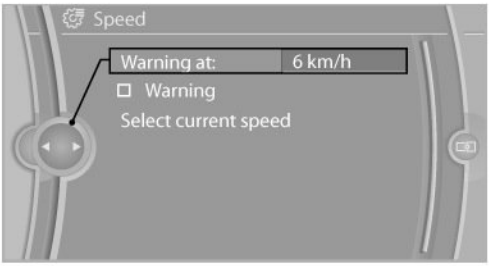
Speed limit

Display of a speed limit which, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"



4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the controller.

Applying your current speed as the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.

   The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

Trip computer

There are two types of computer.

- "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
- "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.

Resetting the trip computer

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.

   "Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle comes to a standstill.



CarManuals2.com

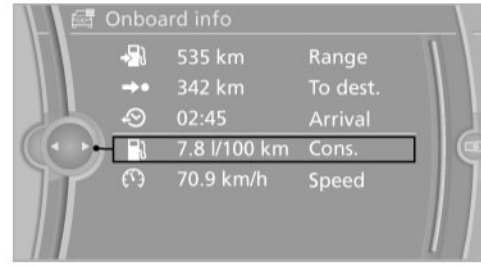
Display on the Control Display

Display the computer or trip computer on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Cons." or "Speed"



4. "Yes"

Settings on the Control Display

Time

Setting the time zone

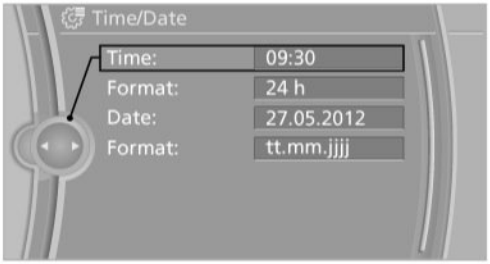
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone"
4. Select the desired time zone.

The time zone is stored.

Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"

3. "Time:"



4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The time format is stored.

Date

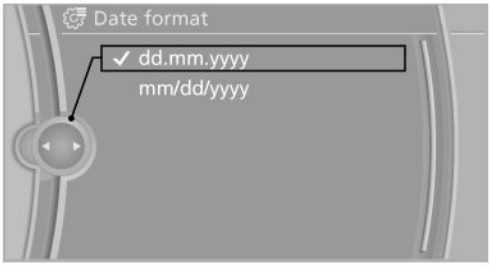
Setting the date

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.



The date format is stored.

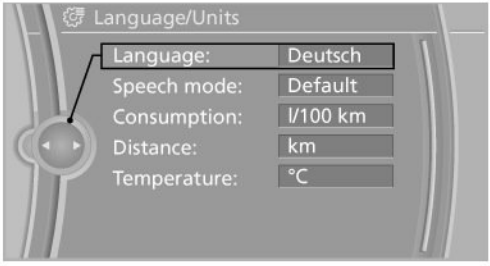
Language

Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"

CarManuals2.com



4. Select the desired language.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the voice dialog

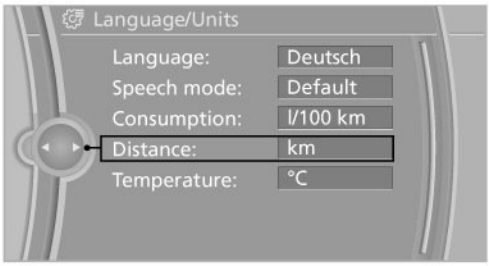
Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 23.

Units of measure

Setting the units of measure

To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.



4. Select the desired unit.

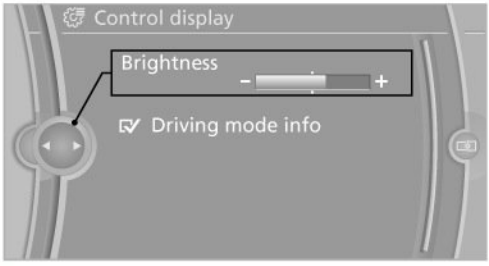
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"



4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

CarManuals2.com

Lamps

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance



1 Rear fog lamps
2 Front fog lamps
3 Automatic headlamp control / Adaptive Light Control / High-beam Assistant / welcome lamps / daytime running lights
4 Lamps off / daytime running lights
5 Parking lamps / daytime running lights
6 Low beams / welcome lamps / High-beam Assistant
7 Instrument lighting
8 Headlamp range control

Parking lamps/low beams, headlamp control

General information

Switch position: 0, ,

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings.

Parking lamps

Switch position : the vehicle lamps light up on all sides, e.g., for parking.

Do not use the parking lamps for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, it is preferable to switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamps, refer to page 86.

Low beams

Switch position with the ignition switched on: the low beams light up.

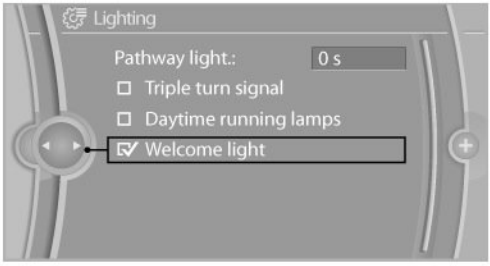
CarManuals2.com

Welcome lamps

When parking the vehicle, leave the switch in position or : the parking and interior lamps light up briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome light"



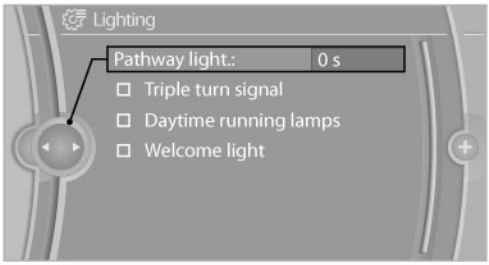
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Headlamp courtesy delay feature

The low beams stay lit for a short while after the ignition is switched off, if the lamps are switched off and the headlamp flasher is switched on.

Setting the duration

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.: s"



4. Set the duration.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Automatic headlamp control

Switch position : the low beams are switched on and off automatically, e.g., in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The low beams always stay on when the fog lamps are switched on.

Personal responsibility

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the lamps manually under these conditions.◄

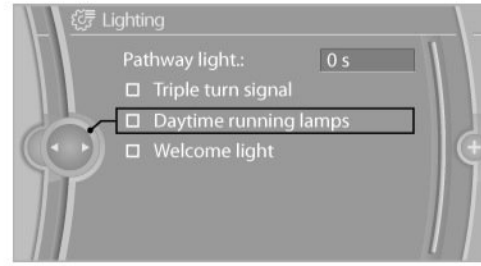
Daytime running lights

With the ignition switched on, the daytime running lights light up in position 0, or . After the ignition is switched off, the parking lamps light up in position .

CarManuals2.com

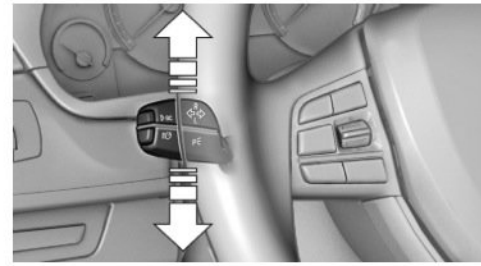
Activating/deactivating

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Roadside parking lamps



The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on

With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Adaptive light control

The concept

Adaptive light control is a variable headlamp control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Activating

Switch position AUTO with the ignition switched on.

The turning lamps are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the driver's side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

When driving in reverse, only the turning lamp is active.

CarManuals2.com

Self-leveling headlights

The self-leveling headlights feature adapts the light distribution to the contours of the road.

The light distribution is lowered on hilltops to avoid blinding oncoming traffic and tilted in depressions to increase visibility.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

Adaptive light control is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Headlamp range control

With halogen headlamps, the headlamp range of the low beams can be manually adjusted for the vehicle load to avoid blinding oncoming traffic.

The values following the slash apply to trailer operation.

0 / 1 = 1 to 2 people without luggage.

1 / 1 = 5 people without luggage.

1 / 2 = 5 people with luggage.

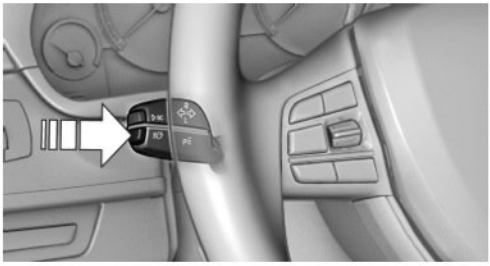
2 / 2 = 1 person, full cargo area.

High-beam Assistant

The concept

When the low beams are switched on, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off or suppresses the light in the areas that blind oncoming traffic. The procedure is controlled by a sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating



1. Turn the light switch to HIGH BEAM or AUTO.
2. Press the button on the turn signal lever, arrow.

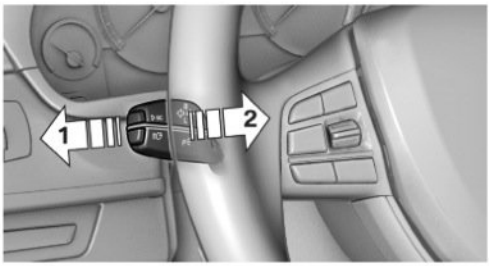


The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the lights are switched on, the high beams are switched on and off automatically.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.

Switching the high beams on and off manually



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High beams off/headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

The High-beam Assistant can be switched off when manually adjusting the light. To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits

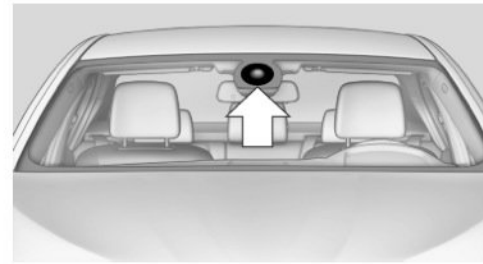
Personal responsibility

The high-beam assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where this is required to avoid a safety risk.◄

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ In detecting poorly-lit road users, such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on freeways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ At low speeds.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Camera



The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep windshield clean and clear in the area in front of the interior rear view mirror.

Fog lamps

Front fog lamps

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on.



Press the button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlamp control, refer to page 86, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lamps.

Instrument lighting

Adjusting



The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness using the thumbwheel.

CarManuals2.com

Interior lamps

General information

The interior lamps, footwell lamps, entry lamps and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically.

The brightness of some of these lamps is influenced by the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting.



1 Interior lamps

2 Reading lamp

Switching the interior lamps on and off

CarManuals2.com



Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

Reading lamps



Press the button.

Reading lamps are located at the front and rear next to the interior lamps.

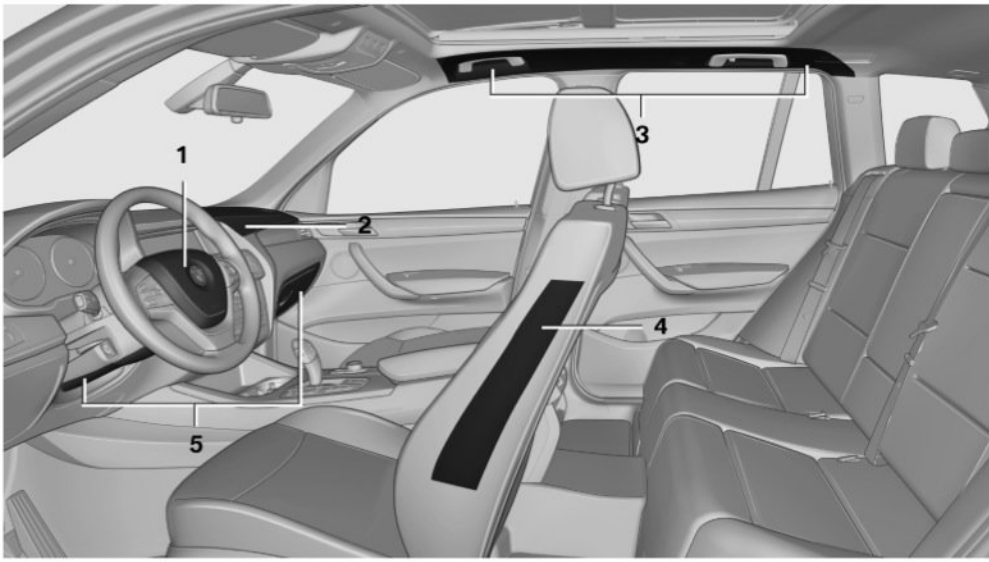
With the interior lamps shut off, the reading lamps cannot be switched on.

Safety

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbags

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint.

CarManuals2.com

Side airbags

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbags

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

CarManuals2.com

Information on how to ensure the optimal protective effect of the airbags

- Keep at a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim, holding your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the danger of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible if the airbag is triggered.
- There should be no people, animals, or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Keep the dashboard and window on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not approved specifically for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not rest against the head airbag; otherwise, injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.
- Do not remove the airbag restraint system.
- Do not remove the steering wheel.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, cover them or modify them in any way.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, the seats, the roof pillars and the sides of the headliner.◄

Even when all instructions are followed closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.

In the case of a malfunction, deactivation and after triggering of the airbags

Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered; otherwise, there is the danger of burns.

Only have the airbags checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generator scrapped by your service center or a workshop that has the necessary authorization for handling explosives.

Non-professional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired triggering of the airbag, either of which could result in injury.◄

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

When the ignition is switch on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

- Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- The warning lamp lights up continuously.

When there is a malfunction, have the airbag system checked immediately

When there is a malfunction, have the airbag system checked immediately; otherwise, there is a risk that the system does not function as expected in the event of an accident despite corresponding severity of the accident.◄

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

The system determines whether the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the resistance of the human body.

The front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly.

Leave feet in the footwell

Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, the front passenger airbags may not function properly.◄

Child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, see the safety notes and instructions under Children on the front passenger seat.◄

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To make sure that the occupied seat cushion can be evaluated correctly

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by the manufacturer of your vehicle.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.

Indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags



The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.



- The indicator lamp lights up when a child who is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system intended for that purpose is detected on the seat or the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child seats

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, especially in the child seats that were required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make

CarManuals2.com

sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.

CarManuals2.com

Strength of the driver's and front passenger airbag

The strength with which the driver's and front passenger airbags are triggered depends on the position of the driver's and front passenger seats.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats when a corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Move the respective seat forward all the way.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Unobstructed area of movement

Ensure that the area of movement of the seats is unobstructed to avoid personal injury or damage to objects.◄

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The concept

The tire inflation pressure is measured in the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Functional requirements

The system must have been reset when the inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly. Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limits

Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◄

The system does not operate correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire may be indicated despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire:

- For a mounted wheel without TPM electronics.
- When the TPM is disturbed by other systems or devices with the same radio frequency.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor - TPM"

The status is displayed.

Status display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

A change in the tire inflation pressure during driving is taken into account.

A correction is only necessary if this is indicated by the TPM

CarManuals2.com

Wheels, green

The tire inflation pressure is equal to the target state.

One wheel is yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

All wheels are yellow

- A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.
- The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.
- A flat tire in one or more tires while the system is being reset.

Wheels, gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire. Reasons for this may be:

- TPM is being reset.
- Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency.
- Malfunction.

For Canadian models: Additional information

The status display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures and tire temperatures.

When correcting the tire inflation pressures, note the following:

The tire pressure increases as the tire temperature increases.

Therefore, only correct the tire inflation pressure when the tire is at the ambient temperature. Compare the displayed tire temperature with the external temperature in the instrument cluster.

Resetting the system

Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Reset the tire pressure using "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving for a few minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are applied as set values. The resetting process is completed automatically during driving. The tires are shown in green and "TPM active" is shown on the Control Display.

The trip can be interrupted at any time. If you drive away again, the process resumes automatically.

If a flat tire is detected during a reset, all tires are displayed in yellow.

Low tire pressure message

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

- There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
- The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires, refer to page 244, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

CarManuals2.com

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.◀

When a low inflation pressure is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if necessary.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.
2. Rectify the flat tire on the damaged wheel.

   Use of tire sealant, e.g., the Mobility System, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if necessary.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed

You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on the cargo load and the driving style and conditions.

For a vehicle containing an average load, the possible driving distance is approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When the vehicle is driven with a damaged tire, its handling characteristics change, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance, and altered self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be smaller or greater depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◀

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◀

Message when the system was not reset

A Check Control message is displayed.

The system detected a wheel change but was not reset.

Warnings regarding the current tire inflation pressure are not reliable.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system.

Malfunction



The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

Display in the following situations:

- A wheel without TPM electronics is fitted: have the service center check it if necessary.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by your service center.
- TPM could not be fully reset. Reset the system again.
- Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the disturbance, the system automatically becomes active again.

CarManuals2.com

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor

The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

It detects a pressure loss in a tire by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

In the event of a pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel change. This is detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limits

Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◂

A natural, even pressure loss in all four tires cannot be detected. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

CarManuals2.com

- When the system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration.
- When driving with snow chains.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization with "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Indication of a flat tire

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 244, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.◂

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if necessary.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.

2. Rectify the flat tire on the damaged wheel.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed

You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on the cargo load and the driving style and conditions.

For a vehicle containing an average load, the possible driving distance is approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When the vehicle is driven with a damaged tire, its handling characteristics change, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance, and altered self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be smaller or greater depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

CarManuals2.com

Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◂

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◂

Lane departure warning

The concept

Starting at a specific speed, this system alerts you when the vehicle on streets with lane markings is about to leave the lane. Depending on the country-specific version of the vehicle, the speed is between 35 mph/55 km/h and 45 mph/70 km/h. When switching on the system below this speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster.

The steering wheel begins vibrating gently in the event of warnings. The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Switching on/off

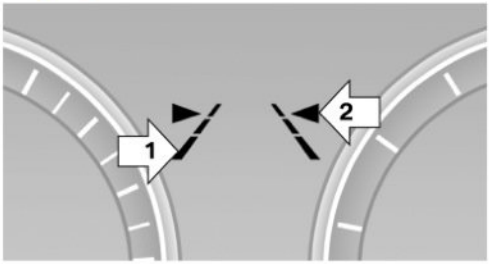


Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display



- Lines, arrow 1: the system is activated.
- Arrows, arrow 2: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Issued warning

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel begins vibrating.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

End of warning

The warning ends:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.

System limits

Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the course of the road and the traffic situation.

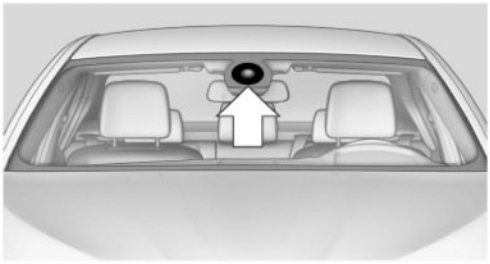
In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control of the vehicle.◂

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- In the event of worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When the lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights.
- When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

CarManuals2.com

Camera



The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep windshield clean and clear in the area in front of the interior rear view mirror.

Brake force display

The concept



CarManuals2.com

- During normal brake application, the outer brake lamps light up.
- During heavy brake application, the inner brake lamps light up in addition.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle remains steerable even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

CarManuals2.com

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost. It thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The concept

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when driving away and accelerating.

DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions, such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Subject to physical limits, DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes at individual wheels.

Adjust your driving style to the situation

An appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC.

Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner.◀

Indicator/warning lamps



The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in bends.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC



Press and hold the button, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and DSC OFF is displayed.

The DSC system is switched off.

Activating DSC



Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Indicator/warning lamps

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

The concept

The DTC system is a version of the DSC in which forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum forward momentum on special road conditions, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but driving stability is limited.

It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When rocking the vehicle or driving off in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Activating the Dynamic Traction Control DTC provides maximum traction on loose ground. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Activating DTC



Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC



Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Performance Control

Performance Control enhances the agility of your vehicle.

To enhance performance during sporty driving, the rear wheel on the inside of the curve is braked while the resulting braking effect is largely compensated by engine intervention.

xDrive

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of your vehicle. Concerted action by the xDrive and DSC further optimize traction and driving dynamics. The xDrive all-wheel-drive system variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

CarManuals2.com

HDC Hill Descent Control

The concept

HDC is a downhill driving assistant that automatically controls vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients. Without applying the brakes, the vehicle moves at slightly more than walking speed.

Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving downhill, the vehicle reduces its speed to approx. walking speed and then keeps its speed constant.

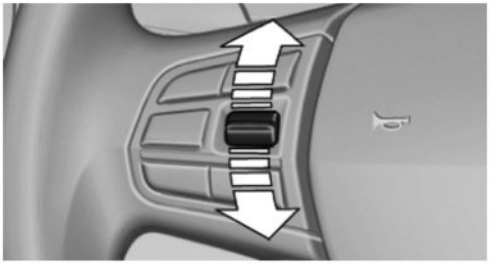
As long as there is active braking, the system is on standby. The system does not brake the vehicle during this time.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Use HDC in low gears or in transmission position D or R only.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Specify desired speed in the range from approx. 4 mph/6 km/h to approx. 15 mph/25 km/h using the rocker switch of the cruise control on the steering wheel. Vehicle speed can be changed by lightly accelerating.



- Press up the rocker switch to the point of resistance: the speed increases gradually.
- Press up the rocker switch past the point of resistance: the speed increases while the rocker switch is pressed.
- Press down the rocker switch to the point of resistance: the speed decreases gradually.
- Press down the rocker switch past the point of resistance: when driving forward, the speed decreases to approx. 6 mph/10 km/h; when reversing, the speed decreases to approx. 4 mph/6 km/h.

Activating HDC



Press the button; the LED above the button lights up.

Deactivating HDC

Press the button again and the LED goes out. HDC is automatically deactivated above approx. 37 mph/60 km/h.

Display in the instrument cluster



The selected speed is displayed in the speedometer.

- Green: the system is actively braking the vehicle.
- Orange: the system is on standby.

Malfunction

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster. HDC is not available, e.g., due to elevated brake temperatures.

Dynamic Damping Control

The concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

The system enhances driving dynamics and comfort as required for the road surface and driving style.

Programs

The system offers two different programs.

The programs can be selected via the Driving Experience Switch, refer to page 104.

SPORT

Consistently sporty control of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

CarManuals2.com

SPORT+

Consistently sporty control of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility when driving with limited driving stabilization.

COMFORT

Balanced control of the vehicle.

Variable sport steering

The variable sport steering increases the steering angle of the front wheels at large steering wheel angles, e.g., in tight curves or when parking. Steering becomes more direct.

It also varies the force required to turn the wheels in accordance with the vehicle speed.

This results in a sporty steering response. In addition, it becomes easier to steer during parking and maneuvering.

Driving Experience Switch

The concept

The Driving Experience Switch can be used to adjust the certain characteristics of the vehicle. Various programs can be selected for this purpose. The Driving Experience Switch and the DSC OFF buttons can each be used to activate a program.

Operating the programs

Press the button	Program
	DSC OFF TRACTION
	SPORT+ SPORT COMFORT ECO PRO

Automatic program change

The system automatically switches to COMFORT in the following situations:

- Failure of Dynamic Damping Control.
- Failure of DSC Dynamic Damping Control.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.
- When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DSC OFF

When DSC OFF, refer to page 101, is active, driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

TRACTION

When TRACTION is active, the vehicle has maximum traction on loose road surfaces. DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 102, is activated. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

SPORT+

Sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension with limited driving stabilization.

The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

CarManuals2.com

Activating SPORT+



Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

Automatic program change

When activating cruise control, the program automatically switches to SPORT mode.

Indicator/warning lamps

SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

SPORT

Sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension with maximum driving stabilization.

The program can be configured to individual specifications. The configuration is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating SPORT



Press button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

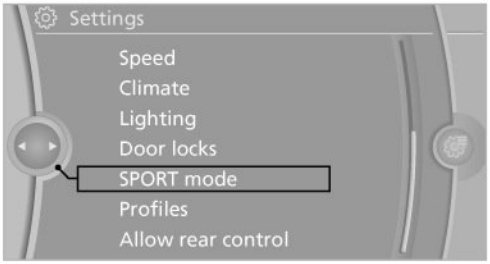
Configuring SPORT

When the display is activated on the Control Display, refer to page 106, the sport program can be set to individual specifications.

- ▷ Activate the sport program.
- ▷ "Configure SPORT"
- ▷ Configure the program.

Optionally, the sport program can be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"
2. "SPORT mode"



3. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when the sport program is activated.

COMFORT

For a balanced tuning with maximum driving stabilization.

Activating COMFORT



Press button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

In certain situations, the system automatically changes to the NORMAL program, automatic program change, refer to page 104.

ECO PRO

ECO PRO, refer to page 145, provides consistent tuning to minimize fuel consumption for maximum range with maximum driving stabilization.

Comfort functions and the engine controller are adjusted.

The program can be configured to individual specifications.

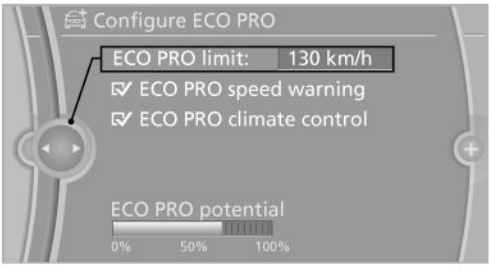
Activating ECO PRO



Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"



Make the desired settings.

Displays

Program selection



Pressing the button displays a list of the selectable programs.

CarManuals2.com

Selected program

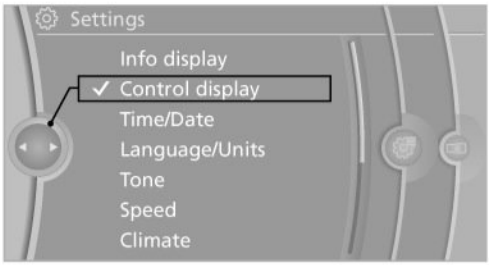


The selected program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Display on the Control Display

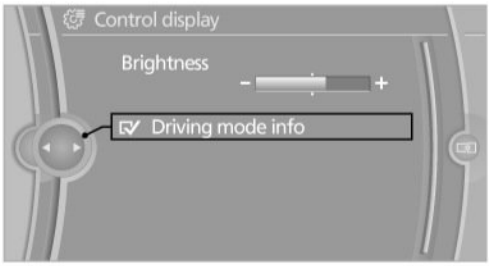
Program changes can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"



3. "Driving mode info"

CarManuals2.com



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

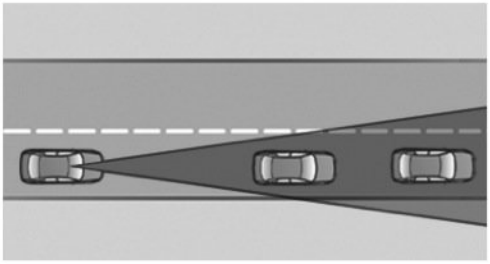
CarManuals2.com

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Collision warning

The concept

The system issues a two-phase warning of a danger of collision at speeds above approx. 10 mph/15 km/h. The time of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.



In the process, vehicles in a similar direction of movement are observed if they are located within the detection range of the system.

When the vehicle is intentionally brought into contact with a vehicle, the collision warning is delayed to avoid misleading warnings.

Warning stages

Prewarning

This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Acute warning

Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Switching the warning function on/off



 Press the button

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Configuring the warning time

After the warning function is switched on, the warning time can be set via the iDrive.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display in the instrument cluster

The collision warning can be issued in the instrument cluster, in the Head-up Display, and acoustically.

Warning stages

Symbol	Measure
	The vehicle lights up red: prewarning. Increase distance.
	The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

CarManuals2.com

Adapting your speed and driving style

The display does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◄

System limits

Be alert

Due to system limitations, warnings may be not be issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Detection range

The detection capacity of the camera and the collision warning has limitations.

This may result in the warning not being issued or being issued late.

For example, the following situations may not be detected:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

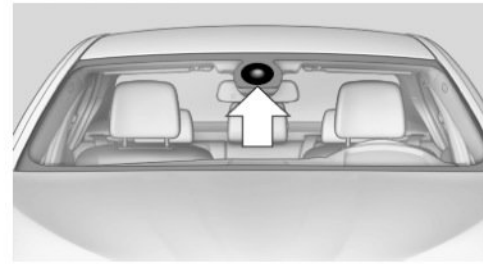
The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the camera view field or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- When driving toward bright lights.
- In the case of vehicles with insufficiently visible tail lamps.
- In the case of partially covered vehicles.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop knob.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Prewarning sensitivity

Depending on the set prewarning time, this may result in increased false warnings.

Camera



The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep windshield clean and clear in the area in front of the interior rear view mirror.

Cruise control

The concept

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking action is insufficient.

Unfavorable conditions

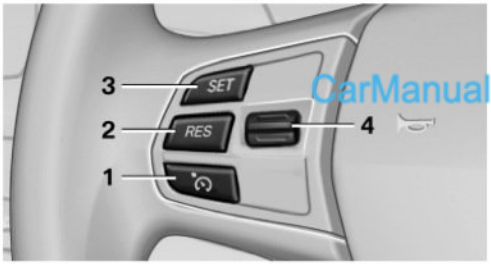
Do not use the system if unfavorable conditions make it impossible to drive at a constant speed, for instance:

- On curvy roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◀

Controls

At a glance



CarManuals2.com

1 System on/off, interrupt
2 Resume speed
3 Store speed
4 Store, maintain/change speed

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

Switching off

Deactivated or interrupted system

If the system is deactivated or interrupted, actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◀

Press the button.

- If active: press twice.
- If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting the system

When active, press the button.

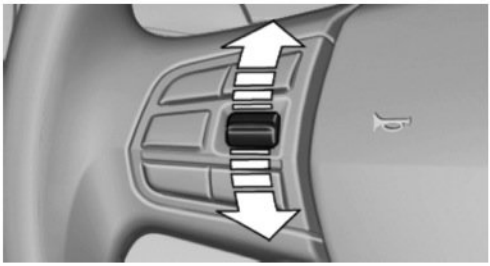
The system is automatically interrupted if:

- The brakes are applied.
- The transmission position D is disengaged.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- DSC is actively controlling stability.
- HDC is activated.

Maintaining/storing the current speed

SET Press the button.

Or



Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

It is displayed in the speedometer and briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, Displays in the speedometer, refer to page 110.

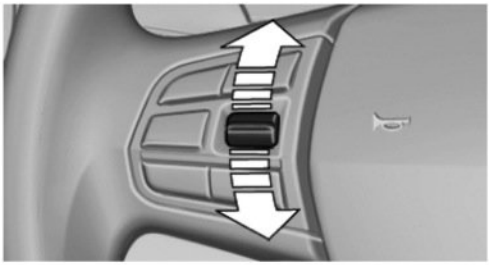
When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing/maintaining speed

The rocker switch can be pressed while the system is interrupted in order to maintain and store the current speed.

Adapting the desired speed

Adapt the desired speed to the road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed if the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it there accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator. After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Resuming the desired speed

RES Press the button.

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed



- The marking lights up in green: the system is active.
- The marking lights up in orange: the system has been interrupted.
- The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Brief status display



Selected desired speed.

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements for operation are currently not met.

CarManuals2.com

PDC Park Distance Control

The concept

In addition to the PDC Park Distance Control, the backup camera, refer to page 113, can be switched on.

Carmanuals2.com

PDC supports you when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind your vehicle are indicated with:

- Signal tones.
- Visual display.

Measurement

Measurements are made by ultrasound sensors in the bumpers.

The range is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given:

- By the front sensors and two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.
- By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

System limits

Check the traffic situation as well

PDC cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside of the PDC detection range.

Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone.◂

Avoid driving quickly with PDC

Avoid approaching an object quickly.

Avoid driving away quickly while PDC is not yet active.

For technical reasons, the system may otherwise be too late in issuing a warning.◂

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects can reach the physical limits of ultrasonic measurement, e.g.:

- With tow bars and trailer hitches.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With low objects.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected.

False warnings

PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered in ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- In heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent tone is sounded that indicates the position of the object. For example, if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object becomes, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 12 in/30 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- If the vehicle stops in front of an object that is detected by only one of the corner sensors.
- If moving parallel to a wall.

The signal tone is switched off:

- When the vehicle moves away from an object by more than approx. 4 in/10 cm.
- When transmission position P is engaged.

Volume

You can set the volume of the PDC signal tone, refer to page 171.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

CarManuals2.com

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are displayed on the Control Display before a signal tone sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

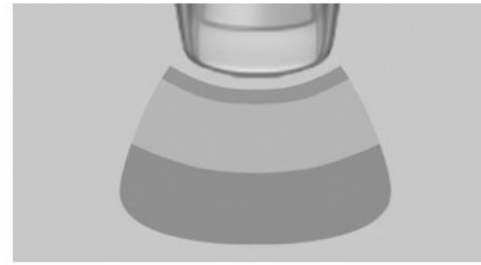
If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display. To switch to PDC:

1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
2. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Zoom view

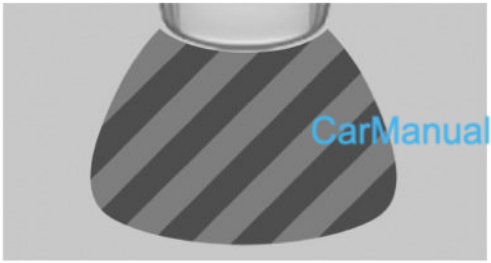
On the left part of the display screen, the vehicle is shown enlarged.



- Forward gear or transmission position D engaged: front area of the vehicle.
- Reverse gear or transmission position R engaged: rear area of the vehicle.

Malfunction

A Check Control message, refer to page 73, is displayed in the instrument cluster.



On the Control Display, the areas in front of and behind the vehicle are shaded. PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

To ensure full operability:

- Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

Backup camera

The concept

The backup camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

System limits

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the backup camera.◄

Detection of objects

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the backup camera.◄

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The backup camera image is displayed if the system was switched on via the iDrive.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

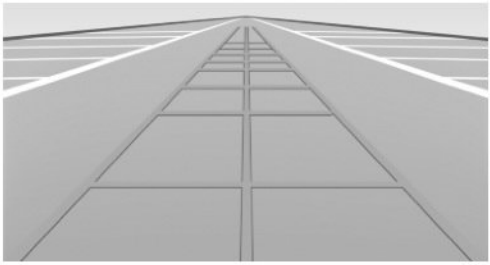
Switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 115.

Assistance functions

Functional requirement

- The backup camera is switched on.
- The tailgate is fully closed.

Pathway lines



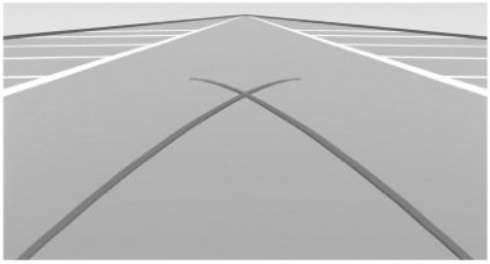
- Can be shown in the backup camera image when in transmission position R.

CarManuals2.com

- Help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.
- Are dependent on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Show the parking aid lines, refer to page 114.

Turning circle lines

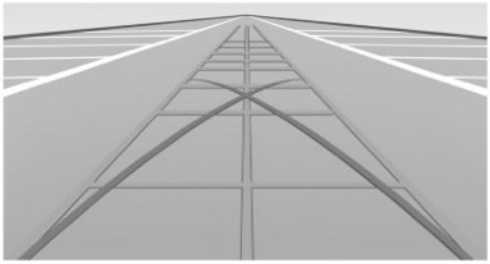


- Can be shown in the backup camera image.
- Show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.
- Only one turning circle line is displayed when the steering wheel is turned.

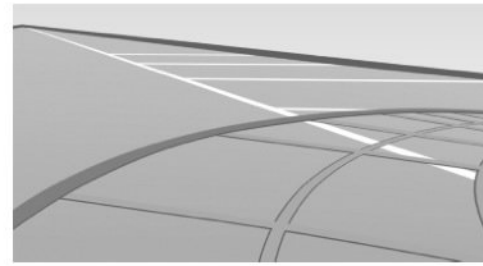
Show the parking aid lines, refer to page 114.

Parking using pathway and turning circle lines

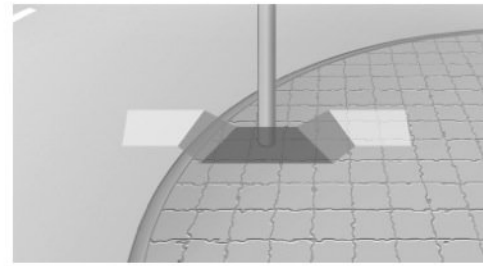
1. Position the vehicle so that the turning circle lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.



Obstacle marking



- Spatially-shaped markings can be shown in the backup camera image.

Their colored steps match the markings of the PDC. This simplifies estimation of the distance to the object shown.

Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Showing the parking aid lines

P "Parking aid lines"

Pathway and turning circle lines are displayed.

Showing the obstacle marking

P "Obstacle marking"

CarManuals2.com

Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

Display on the Control Display

Switching on the backup camera via iDrive

With PDC activated:

"Rear view camera"

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

With the backup camera switched on:

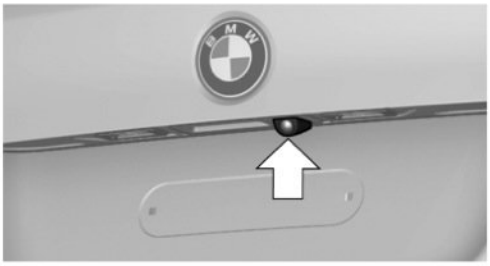
1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With the backup camera switched on:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 268.

Top View

The concept

Top View assists you in parking and maneuvering. The area around the doors and the road area around the vehicle are shown on the Control Display for this purpose.

Capturing the image

The image is captured by two cameras integrated in the exterior mirrors and by the backup camera.

The range is approx. 7 ft/2 m to the side and rear.

In this way, obstacles up to the height of the exterior mirrors are detected early.

System limits

Top View cannot be used in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With the tailgate open.
- With an exterior mirror folded in.
- In poor light.

CarManuals2.com

A Check Control message is displayed in some of these situations.

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the cameras.◂

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The Top View and PDC images are displayed if the system is switched on via iDrive.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

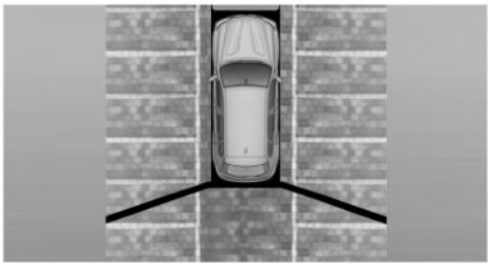
- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

If Top View is displayed, switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 116.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display.

When the distance to an object is small, a red bar is shown in front of the vehicle, as it is in the PDC display.



The display appears as soon as Top View is activated.

If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display. To switch to Top View:

"Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display on the Control Display

Switching on the backup camera via iDrive

With Top View switched on:

"Rear view camera"

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

With Top View switched on:

1. "Brightness"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With Top View switched on:

1. "Contrast"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Displaying the turning circle and pathway lines

- The static, red turning circle line shows the space needed to the side of the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned all the way.
- The variable, green pathway line assists you in assessing the amount of space actually needed to the side of the vehicle.

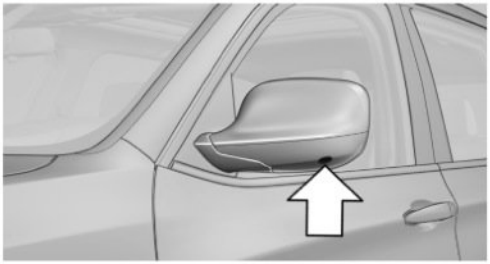
  The pathway line is dependent on the current steering angle and is continuously adjusted with the steering wheel movement.

"Parking aid lines"

Turning circle and pathway lines are displayed.

CarManuals2.com

Cameras

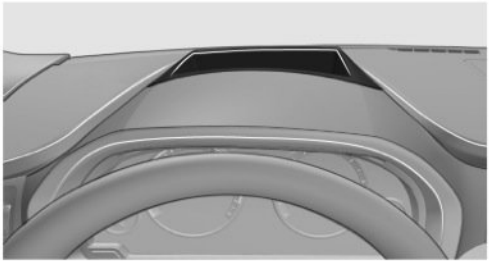


The lenses of the Top View cameras are located at the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 268.

Head-up Display

The concept



This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e.g., the speed.

In this way, the driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by:

- Certain sitting positions.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, check the basic settings.

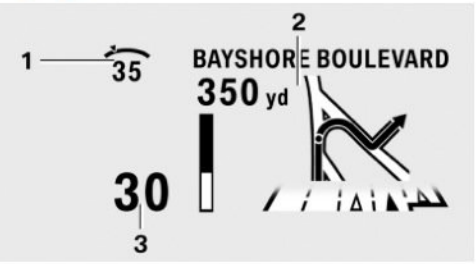
Switching on/off

CarManuals2.com

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Head-up display"

   Switch the Head-up Display ON/OFF as required.

Display



1 Desired speed
2 Navigation system
3 Speed

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient light.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"

3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.

   The brightness is adjusted.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 88.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adjusting the height

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the controller.

   The height is adjusted.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed.

Therefore, have the special windshield replaced by a service center only.

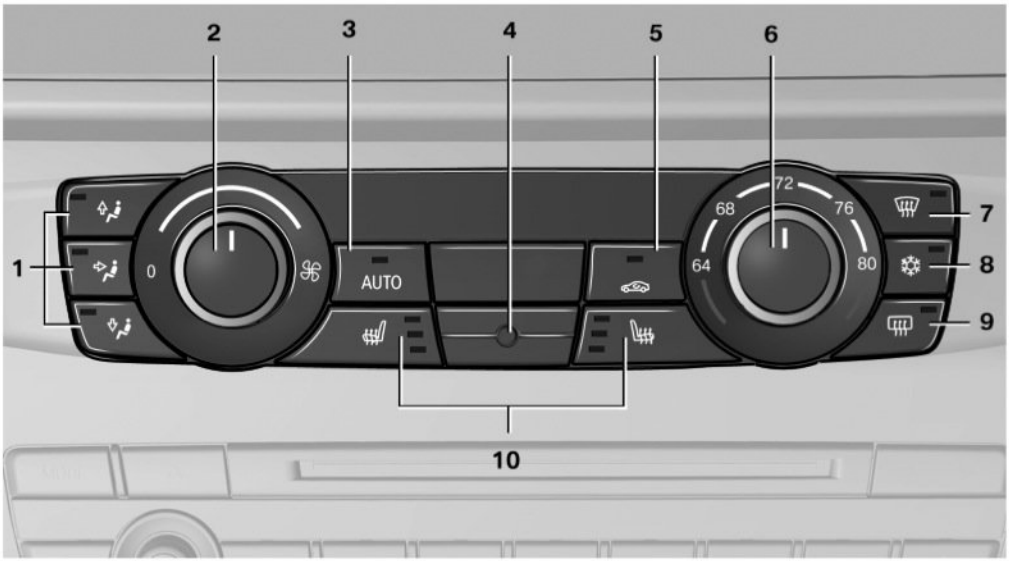
CarManuals2.com

Climate control

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Automatic climate control



1 Vent settings
2 Air volume
3 AUTO program
4 Interior temperature sensor — always keep clear
5 Recirculated-air mode
6 Temperature
7 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
8 Cooling function
9 Rear window defroster
10 Seat heating 49

Climate control functions in detail

Manual air distribution

Press the buttons repeatedly to select a program:

▷ Windows.

▷ Upper body region.

▷ Footwell.

CarManuals2.com

The programs can be combined as necessary.

Air volume, manual



Turn the wheel to set the desired air volume.

The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air volume of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

AUTO program

AUTO Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 120, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Recirculated-air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume, if necessary.

Continuous recirculated-air mode

The recirculated-air mode should not be used for an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates steadily.◂

CarManuals2.com

Temperature



Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation



Press the button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air volume can be adjusted when the program is active.

If the windows fog over, also switch on the cooling function.

Cooling function

The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press the button.

The air is cooled and dehumidified and – depending on the temperature setting – warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 140, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Rear window defroster



Press the button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off

Turn the rotary switch for the air volume, refer to page 120, to 0. The blower and automatic climate control are switched off entirely.

Switching on

Set any air volume.

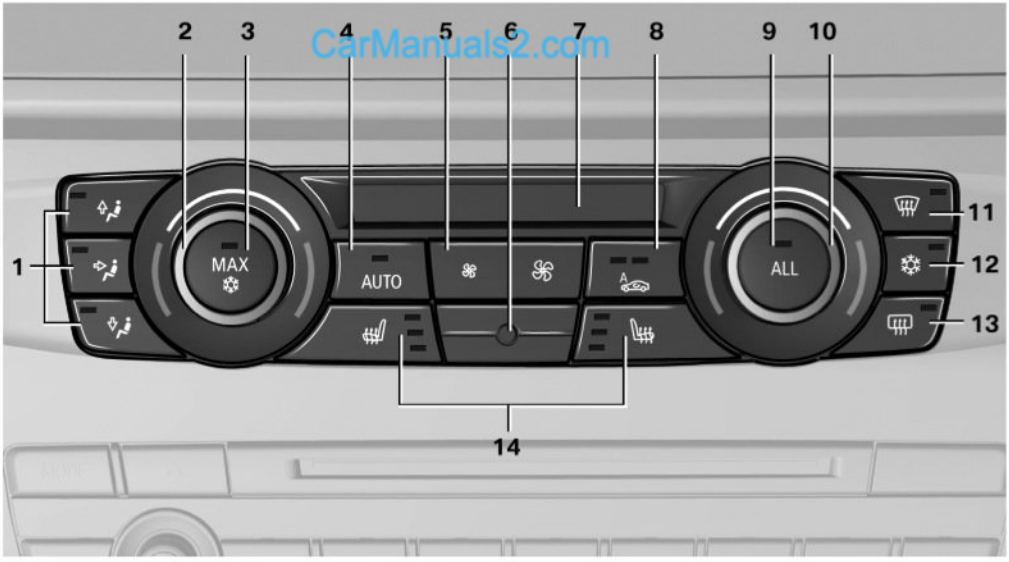
The AUTO program can also be switched on directly via the AUTO button.

Microfilter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 251, of your vehicle.

Automatic climate control with enhanced features



CarManuals2.com

1 Vent settings
2 Temperature, left
3 Maximum cooling
4 AUTO program
5 Air volume, AUTO intensity
6 Interior temperature sensor — always keep clear
7 Display

8 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode
9 ALL program
10 Temperature, right
11 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
12 Cooling function
13 Rear window defroster
14 Seat heating 49

Climate control functions in detail

Manual air distribution

Press the buttons repeatedly to select a program:

-  Windows.
-  Upper body region.
-  Footwell.

The programs can be combined as necessary.

Temperature



Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Maximum cooling



Press the button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Air flows out of the vents for the upper body region. Open them for this purpose.

The air is cooled fastest when the engine is running.

The air flow can be adjusted when the program is active.

AUTO program



Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 123, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air volume and air distribution can be adjusted.



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

CarManuals2.com

Air volume, manual

To be able to manually adjust the air volume, switch off the AUTO program first.



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air volume.

The selected air volume is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air volume of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shutoff automatically.
- Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

CarManuals2.com

If the windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow onto the windshield.



Continuous recirculated-air mode

The recirculated-air mode should not be used for an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates steadily.◄

ALL program



Press the button.

The current setting or later settings of the temperature on the driver's side are transferred to the front passenger side.

The program is switched off if the settings on the front passenger side are changed.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation



Press the button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air volume can be adjusted when the program is active.

If the windows are fogged over, additionally switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

Cooling function

The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press the button.

The air is cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 140, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Rear window defroster



Press the button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off



Press the left button at the minimum speed.

Switching on

Press any button, except for the buttons for the ALL program or rear window heating.

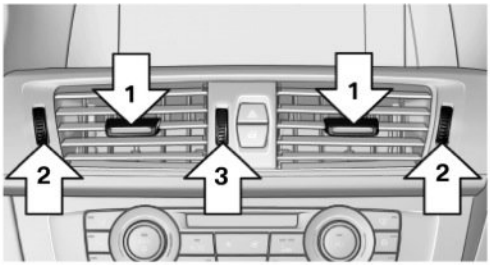
Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 251, of your vehicle.

Ventilation

Front ventilation



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 2.
- Thumbwheel to vary the temperature, arrow 3.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.

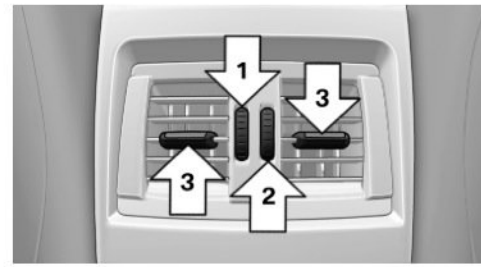
Adjusting the ventilation

- Ventilation for cooling:

  Adjust the vent to direct the air in your direction, e.g., if the vehicle interior is hot from the sun.
- Draft-free ventilation:

  Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.

Ventilation in the rear



- Thumbwheel for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel to vary the temperature, arrow 2.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.

CarManuals2.com

- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 3.

Parked-car ventilation

The concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if necessary.

The system can be switched on and off at any external temperature, either directly or by using two preset switch-on times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Operation can be performed via iDrive.

Switching on/off directly

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"

3. "Activate parked-car vent."

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

Preselecting the switch-on time

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

Activating the switch-on time

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate Timer 1" or "Activate Timer 2"

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to reactivated.

CarManuals2.com

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

CarManuals2.com

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Integrated universal remote control

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

During programming

During programming and before activating a device using the integrated universal remote control, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects in the range of movement of the remote-controlled device; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◄

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Compatibility

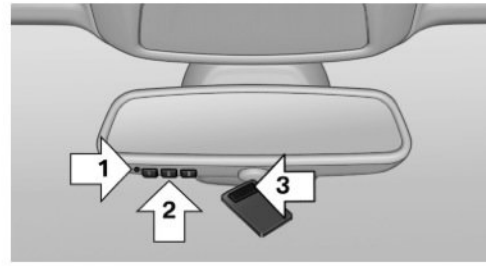
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- Your service center.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

Controls on the interior rearview mirror



- LED, arrow 1.
- Buttons, arrow 2.
- The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.
3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons on the interior

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.

4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. When the LED is flashing faster, this indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

CarManuals2.com

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code system.

Read the system's operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior rearview mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating manual of the system being set up for information on how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

To synchronize:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this work step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons on the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. When the LED is flashing faster, this indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. The system

can then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

Controls

Before operation

Before operating a system using the integrated universal remote control, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects within the range of movement of the remote-controlled system; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◄

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored functions are deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

Connecting electrical devices

Note

Do not plug the charger into the socket

Do not connect battery chargers to the factory-installed sockets in the vehicle. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle.◄

Sockets

Sockets can be used for the operation of electrical devices with the engine running or with the ignition switched on. The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

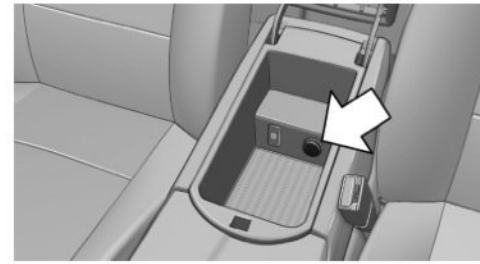
Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Front center console



Remove cover.

Center armrest



Remove cover.

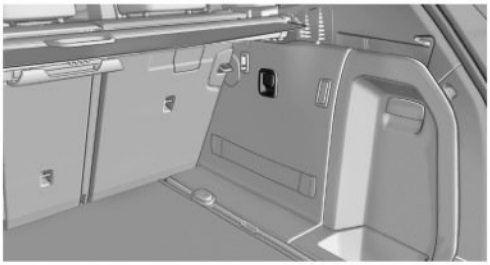
CarManuals2.com

Rear center console



Remove cover.

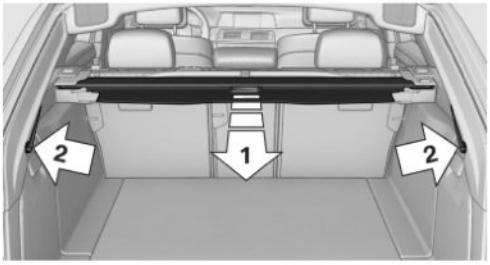
In the cargo area



The socket is located on the right side in the cargo area.

Cargo area

Cargo cover



Pull out the cargo cover, arrow 1, and hook both sides into the brackets, arrow 2.

Hook the cargo cover on both sides

Hook the cargo cover on both sides to prevent damaging the cover.◂

Do not deposit heavy objects

Do not deposit heavy or hard objects on the trunk cover. Otherwise, they could endanger occupants during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example.◂

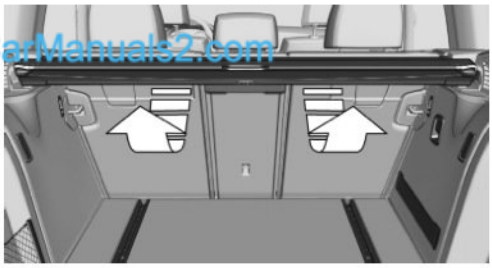
Do not let the trunk cover snap back into place

Do not allow the trunk cover to snap back into place; this can damage it.◂

Removing and inserting

Cargo cover without partition net: Removing

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.



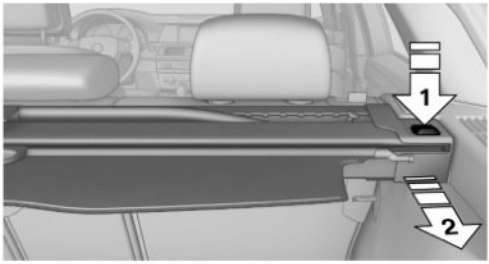
CarManuals2.com

Reach under the cover and turn it upward, arrows. Pull the cover back horizontally.

Cargo cover with partition net: Removing

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.

1. Press the button, arrow 1, to unlock the cover.



2. Pull the cover back, arrow 2.

Installing

Slide the cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets until it audibly latches.

The red warning fields disappear in the case of a cover with partition net.

Tug on the cover to check if it is properly locked in place.

Enlarging the cargo area

General information

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

The rear seat backrest is divided into two parts at a ratio of 60 to 40.

If equipped with through-loading system: the rear seat backrest is divided in the ratio 40–20–40.

Danger of pinching

Before folding down the rear seat backrests, ensure that the area of movement of the backrests is clear. In particular, ensure that no one is located in or reaches into the area of movement of the rear seat backrests when the middle section is folded down. Otherwise, injury or damage may result.◄

Locking the backrest

Before driving with passengers in the rear of the vehicle, make sure that the backrests are engaged and thus locked in place. Otherwise, the restraining effect of the safety belts may be limited in an accident.◄

Ensure that the lock is securely engaged

When folding back the backrest, be sure that it locks in place securely. The red warning field in the control display disappears. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◄

Using the middle safety belt

If the middle safety belt in the rear is used, the larger section of the backrest must be locked. Otherwise, the safety belt will not have a restraining effect.◄

Folding down side

The right side can be folded down separately. The left side can be folded down in combination with the middle section.



Reach into the recess and fold forward.

CarManuals2.com

Folding down the middle section



Reach into the recess and pull forward.

Partition net

⚠ Do not let the partition net snap back into place

Do not allow the partition net to snap back into place; otherwise, there is a danger of injury and the partition net could be damaged.◂

With a normal cargo area

1. Fold open the rear covers on the headliner.
2. Pull the partition net out of the case by the strap.
3. Insert the bars into the brackets on both sides in the headliner toward the front, arrow. This is best performed from the rear seat.

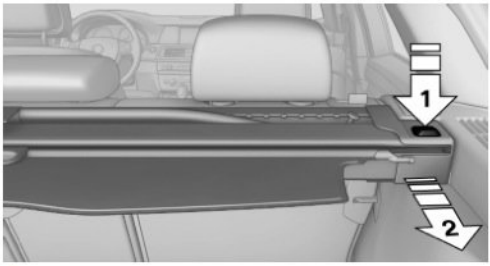


If the partition net is no longer needed: proceed in reverse order.

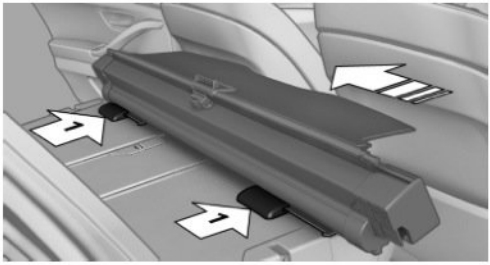
With an enlarged cargo area

1. Fold down the entire rear seat backrest.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, to unlock the case on both sides.

CarManuals2.com



3. Pull the case rearward out of the two side brackets, arrow 2. Make sure not to tilt it in the process.
4. Slide the case all the way into the guides, arrows 1, on the backs of the backrests.



5. Fold open the front covers on the headliner.
6. Carefully pull out the partition net and insert it into the brackets as in the normal cargo area, refer to page 131.

   This is best performed from the front seat.

If the partition net is no longer needed: proceed in reverse order.

Finally, slide the case forward into the two brackets on the sides until it engages. The red warning fields disappear.

Tug on the case to check if it is properly locked in place.

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Notes

No loose objects in the passenger compartment

Do not stow any objects in the passenger compartment without securing them; otherwise, they may present a danger to occupants for instance during braking and avoidance maneuvers.◄

Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard

Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard. The mat materials could damage the dashboard.◄

Storage compartments

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- Glove compartment on the front passenger side, refer to page 132.
- Storage compartment in the front center armrest, refer to page 133.
- Compartments in the doors.
- Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.
- Net in the front passenger footwell.

Glove compartment

CarManuals2.com

Front passenger side

Opening



Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents.◄

Closing

Fold up the cover.

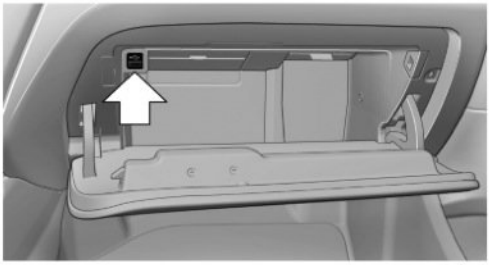
Locking

Lock glove compartment with an integrated key, refer to page 30.

Then the remote control device without an integrated key can be handed over, e.g. in the hotel. Access to the glove box is not possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

USB interface for data transfer



Connection for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g.:

- Personal Profile settings, refer to page 33.
- Music collection, refer to page 187.

Observe the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.
- Do not connect USB hard drives.
- Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Compartments in the doors

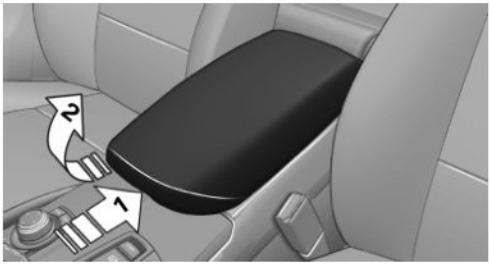
Do not stow any breakable objects

Do not store any breakable objects, e. g. glass bottles, in the compartments, or there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◄

CarManuals2.com

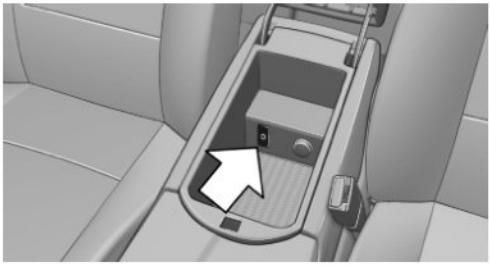
Center armrest

Opening



Press the button, arrow 1, and fold the center arm rest up, arrow 2.

Connection for an external audio device



This can be used to connect an external audio device, such as an MP3 player.

- AUX-IN port, refer to page 192.
- USB audio interface, refer to page 192.

Cupholders

Notes

Shatter-proof containers and no hot drinks

Use light and shatter-proof containers and do not transport hot drinks. Otherwise, there is the increased danger of injury in an accident.◄

Unsuitable containers

Do not forcefully push unsuitable containers into the cupholders. This may result in damage.◄

Front



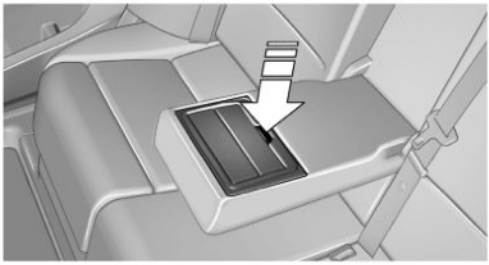
Storage compartment in the front cupholder

Use the inserts for the cupholder as an additional storage compartment. Place the inserts into the cupholder and snap them in place.

Only use the storage compartment for small objects such as keys.

Rear

In the center armrest.



Pull the center armrest forward at the strap.

To open: press the button.

To close: push both covers back in, one after the other.

Pushing back the covers

Push back the covers before folding up the center armrest; otherwise, the cupholder could become damaged.◄

Clothes hooks

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear.

Do not obstruct view

When suspending clothing from the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision.◄

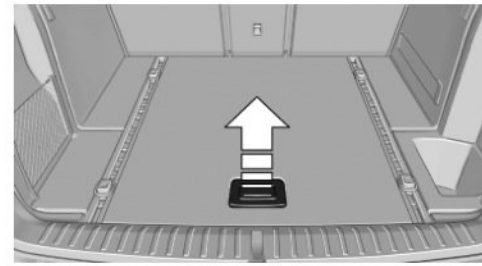
No heavy objects

Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they may present a danger to passengers during braking and evasive maneuvers.◄

Storage compartments in the cargo area

CarManuals2.com

Storage space under the cargo floor cover



Raise the cargo floor panel. The storage space under the cargo floor panel is subdivided.

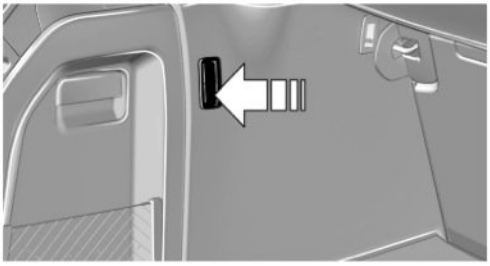
Two additional subdividers can be inserted to partition it further.

Storage compartment on the right side

A waterproof storage compartment is available on the right side of the cargo area floor.

Hooks/multi-function hook

CarManuals2.com



Multi-function hooks are available on the left and right cargo area walls.

Retaining strap

A retaining strap is available on the right side trim for fastening small objects.

Net

Smaller objects can be stored in the net on the left side of the cargo area.

Left side storage compartment

To open: pull the handle.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

To secure the cargo, refer to page 142, there are lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area with rail

To secure the cargo, refer to page 142, there are lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Reversible floor panel

The bottom of the cargo floor panel is coated with a water- and dirt-resistant finish.

Fold the cargo floor panel up, remove it and flip it over.

Hook on the bottom of the cargo floor panel: for easier loading, the raised cargo floor panel can be secured on the edge of the roof with the hook.

Cargo net, FlexNet

To secure the cargo, refer to page 142, the flexible cargo net can also be used.

Folding box

A folding box is located under the cargo area floor.



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

CarManuals2.com

Driving tips

This chapter provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating modes.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to be broken in to adjust to each other.

The following instructions will help achieve a long vehicle life and good economy.

Engine and differential

Always obey the official speed limit.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine, 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kickdown mode for the initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and discs. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

The same breaking in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

CarManuals2.com

Drive with the tailgate closed

Only drive with the tailgate closed; otherwise, in the event of an accident or braking or evasive maneuvers, passengers or other road users may be injured or the vehicle may be damaged. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the passenger compartment.◀

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the blower speed.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system

Hot exhaust system

High temperatures are generated in the exhaust system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious personal injury as well as property damage.

CarManuals2.com

Do not touch hot exhaust pipes; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.◄

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

It is advised that you do not use mobile communication devices, e.g., mobile phones, inside the vehicle without connecting them directly to the external antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can interfere with each other. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation generated during transmission will be discharged from the vehicle interior.◄

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce your speed to prevent hydroplaning.◄

Driving through water

Drive though calm water only if it is not deeper than 19.6 inches/50 cm, and at this height no faster than walking speed.

Adhere to water depth and speed limitations

Do not exceed this water depth and walking speed; otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◄

Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations when this is necessary.

The vehicle maintains steering responsiveness. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Objects in the area around the pedals

No objects in the area around the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the area of motion of the pedals; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly fixed in place.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, for example.◄

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat, resulting in a reduction in the brake system efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if necessary.

Automatic transmission:

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down in the manual mode of the automatic transmission.

Avoid load on the brakes

Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system. Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◄

Do not drive in neutral

Do not drive in neutral or with the engine stopped, as doing so disables engine braking. In addition, steering and brake assist is unavailable with the engine stopped.◄

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion occurs when the minimum pressure that must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the discs is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Therefore, traces of condensed water under the vehicle are normal.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

Note

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Attachment to the rack

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Mounting

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

CarManuals2.com

Loading

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not be too large in area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., tie with ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Loading

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Overloading the vehicle

To avoid exceeding the approved carrying capacity of the tires, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This could result in a sudden loss of tire inflation pressure.◄

No fluids in the trunk

Make sure that fluids do not leak into the trunk; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.◄

CarManuals2.com

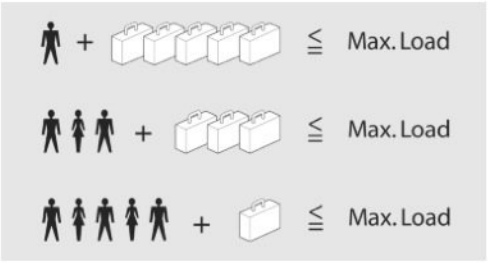
Determining the load limit



1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard:
   ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

   For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

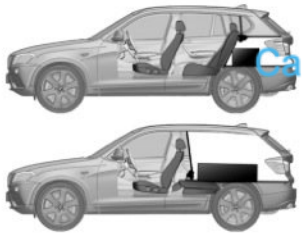
Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing cargo

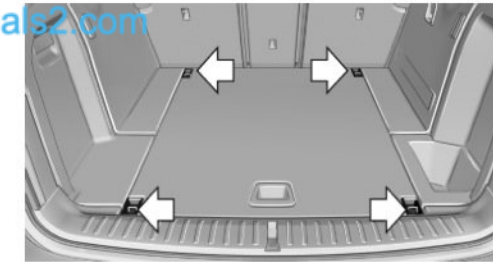


- Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- Cover sharp edges and corners.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward and as low as possible, ideally directly behind the rear seat.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- Use the partition net, refer to page 131, to protect passengers. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate the partition net.
- Place protective material around any sharp-edged or pointed objects that could bump against the rear window while the vehicle is in motion.

Securing cargo

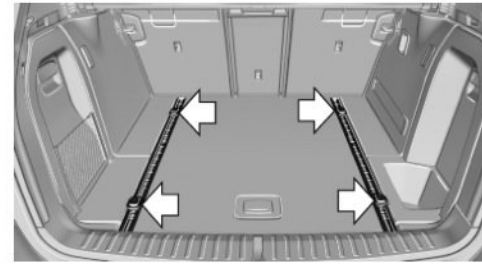
Lashing eyes in the cargo area

CarManuals2.com

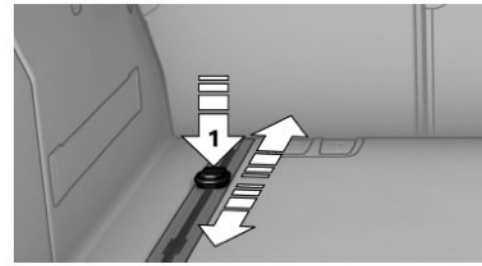


To secure the cargo, there are four lashing eyes in the cargo area

Lashing eyes in the cargo area with rails



To secure the cargo, there are four movable lashing eyes in the cargo area



To slide the lashing eyes, press the button, arrow 1. Make sure that the lashing eyes latch at the new position.

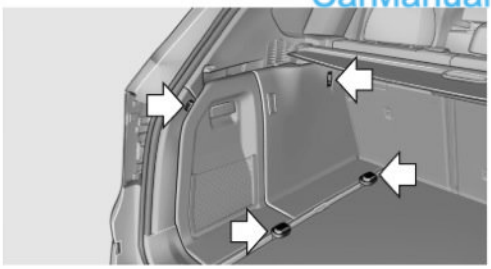
If available, the lashing eyes are located under the cargo floor cover in the cargo area. They can be inserted into the openings in the rails.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Cargo net, FlexNet

The flexible cargo net is hooked into eyes and secures the cargo in the cargo area. The storage net can be attached to the following eyes:

CarManuals2.com



- Lashing eyes on the rail system.
- Eyes on the cargo area wall.

The eyes are located on both sides of the cargo area.

Securing cargo

- Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps.

  Cargo straps, cargo netting, retaining straps or draw straps on the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Securing cargo

Always position and secure the cargo as described above; otherwise, it can endanger the car's occupants if sudden braking or swerving becomes necessary.

Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car; otherwise, they could be thrown around as a result of hard braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.◄

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Your vehicle contains advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can have an influence on fuel consumption and on the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

CarManuals2.com

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and looking ahead reduces fuel consumption.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

On a downhill gradient, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of your vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

Using this system can cause certain components of the vehicle to become worn prematurely.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle economy and operating life. Have the maintenance carried out by your service center.

Please also note the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 251.

CarManuals2.com

ECO PRO

The concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort functions, e. g. the climate control output, are adjusted.

The extension of the range that is achieved as a result can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating ECO PRO



Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Display in the instrument cluster

ECO PRO bonus range



An extension of the range can be achieved by an adjusted driving style.

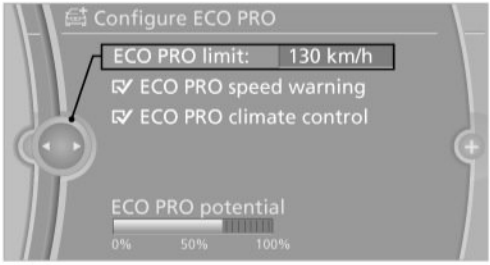
This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO

Via the Driving Experience Switch

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"

3. "Configure ECO PRO"
4. Configure the program.



Via the iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "ECO PRO mode"

or

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure ECO PRO"

Configure the program.

ECO PRO Tip

▷ "ECO PRO limit:":

Set ECO Pro speed at which an ECO PRO Tip is to be displayed.

▷ "ECO PRO speed warning":

A reminder is displayed if the set ECO PRO speed is exceeded.

ECO PRO climate control

"ECO PRO climate control"

The climate control is adjusted to be fuel-efficient.

By making a slight change to the set temperature, or adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the passenger compartment fuel consumption can be economized.

The output of the seat heater is also reduced.

ECO PRO Potential

The percentage of potential savings that can be achieved with the current configuration is displayed.

Indications on the Control Display

EfficientDynamics

Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed during driving.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "EfficientDynamics"

Displaying fuel consumption history

The average fuel consumption can be displayed within an adjustable time frame.

"Consumption history"

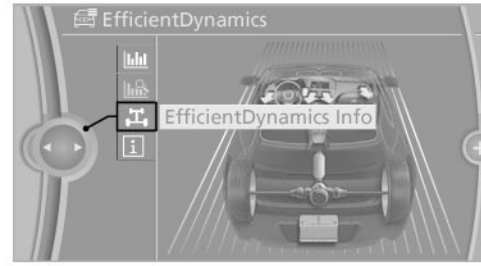
Adjusting fuel consumption history time frame

Select the symbol. Select the symbol.

CarManuals2.com

Displaying EfficientDynamics info

The current efficiency can be displayed.



"EfficientDynamics Info"

The following systems are displayed:

▷ Automatic engine Start/Stop function.

▷ Energy recovery.

▷ Climate control output.

Displaying ECO PRO Tips

"ECO PRO Tips"

The setting is stored for the profile currently in use.

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Navigation

This chapter contains various examples of how the navigation system can guide you reliably to your destination.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Navigation system

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle, with the aid of satellites and vehicle sensors, and can reliably guide you to every entered destination.

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Entries in stationary vehicle

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◂

CarManuals2.com

Starting navigation system

1. MENU Press the button on the controller.
2. "Navigation"

NAV The navigation system can also be accessed directly with the button on the controller.

Destination input

Manual destination entry

General information

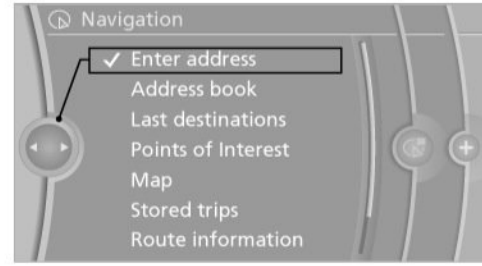
The system supports you in entering street names and house numbers by automatically completing the entry and providing entry comparisons, refer to page 21.

Stored town/city and street names can be called up quickly.

- ▷ If the existing entries should not be changed, the entries for the state/province and town/city can be skipped.
- ▷ Destination guidance is started to the town/city center if no street is entered.

Entering a state/province

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"

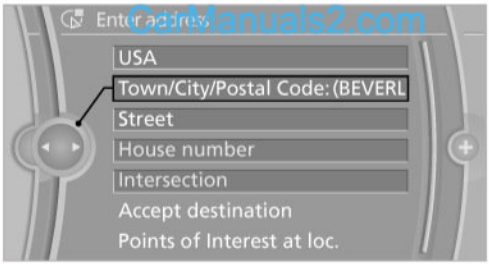


3. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.



2. Select letters, if applicable.

   The list is narrowed down further with each entry.
3. Move the controller to the right.
4. Select the town/city name from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2. 1@+ Select the symbol.
3. Select the numbers.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the entry.
6. Selecting an entry.

Entering a street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection in the same way as you would enter a town/city.

If there are several streets with the same name:

1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street.
3. Select the street.

Alternative: enter the street address and house number

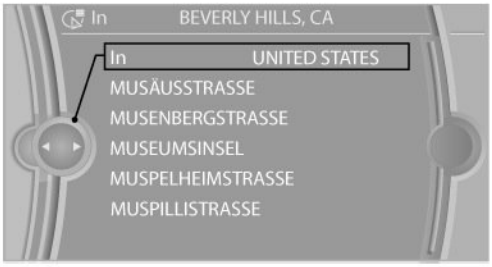
1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter the street as you would the town/city.
3. "House number"
4. Select the numbers.
5. Change to the list of house numbers.
6. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Street does not exist in the destination city/town

The desired street does not exist in the specified city/town because it belongs to another part of the city/town.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" the displayed country.

   All streets of the selected state/province are offered. The associated town/city is displayed after the street name.



6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street.
9. Select the street.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Starting destination guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

   Add, refer to page 157, a destination as a further destination.

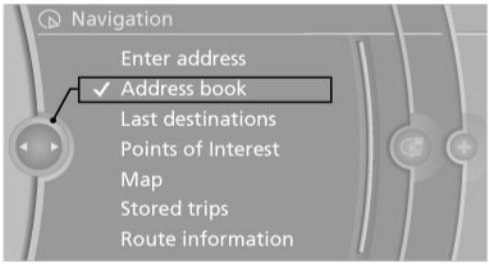
CarManuals2.com

Address book

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"

   Contacts with addresses are displayed if these have been checked as destinations from among the Contacts.

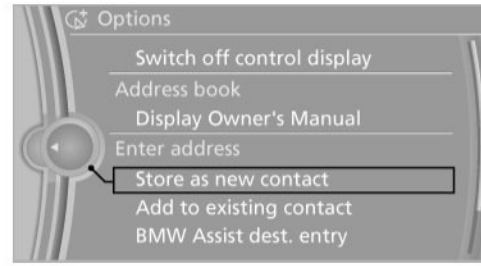


3. Select a contact in the list or, if desired, with "A-Z search".
4. If necessary, "Business address" or "Home address"

Storing the destination in the address book

After entering the destination, store the destination in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Guidance"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

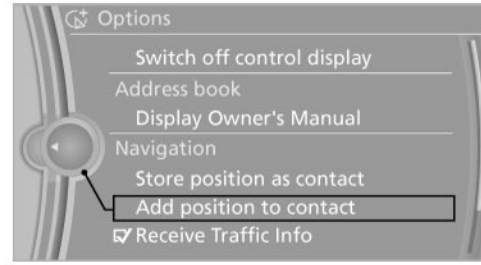


6. Select an existing contact, if available.
7. "Business address" or "Home address"
8. Enter "Last name" and, if applicable, "First name".
9. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

The current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact"



4. Depending on the selection, choose an existing contact from the list. Select the type of address and enter the first and last names.
5. "Store in vehicle"

Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"

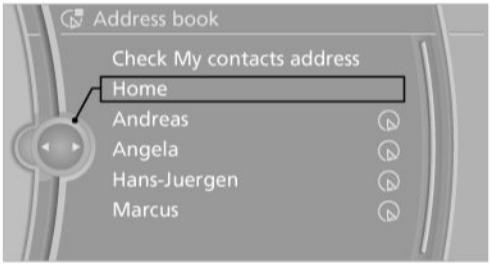
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

3. Highlight the entry.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry"

Using the home address as the destination

The home address must be stored.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home"



4. "Start guidance"

CarManuals2.com

Last destinations

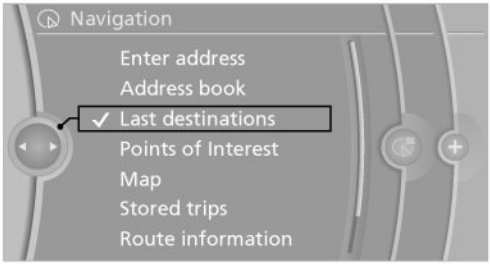
At a glance

The destinations previously entered are stored automatically.

The destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Calling up the last destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"



Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

Editing the destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations"

Special destinations

General information

Even with the most current navigation data, information regarding particular individual destinations may have changed. For instance, certain gas stations may not be operating.

Opening the search for special destinations

To select special destinations such as hotels or tourist attractions:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"
3. Select the search function.

With the Professional navigation system: Online Search

1. "Google™ Local Search"
2. Select a special destination.
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Start guidance"

A-Z search

1. "A-Z search"
2. "Town/City"

   Select or enter the town/city.
3. "Category"
4. Select the category.
5. "Category details"

   In the Professional navigation system: some special destinations permit selection of multiple category details. Move the controller to the left to leave the category details.
6. "Keyword"
7. Enter the keyword.

   A list of the special destinations is displayed.
8. Select a special destination.

   Details are displayed.

   If multiple details are stored, you can browse through the pages.

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established if necessary.
9. Select the symbol.

   "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

   Add a destination as a further destination, refer to page 157.

"Start search": if a search term is not entered, the search is repeated with the previous search term.

Category search

1. "Category search"
2. "Town/City"

   Select or enter the town/city.
3. "Category"
4. Select the category.
5. "Category details"

   In the Professional navigation system: some special destinations permit selection of multiple category details. Move the controller to the left to leave the category details.

   Some special destinations permit selection of multiple category details. Move the controller to the left to leave the category details.
6. "Start search"

   A list of the special destinations is displayed.
7. Select a special destination.

   Details are displayed.

   If multiple details are stored, you can browse through the pages.

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established if necessary.
8. Select the symbol.

   "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

   Add a destination as a further destination, refer to page 157.

CarManuals2.com

Display of special destinations

List of special destinations: special destinations are organized by distance and are displayed with a directional arrow to the special destination.

With the Professional navigation system: on the split screen, special destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map view as symbols. The display depends on the scale of the map and the category.

Destination entry via BMW Assist

A connection is established to the Concierge service, refer to page 225.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

3. Open "Options".
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Displaying special destinations in the map

CarManuals2.com

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map view:

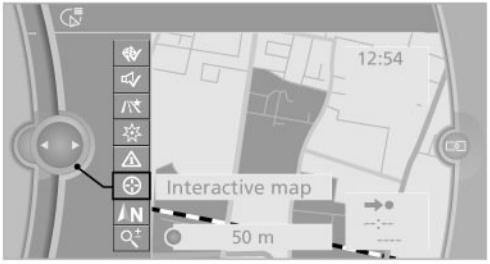
1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display Points of Interest"
5. Select the setting.

Destination entry by map

Selecting the destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

   The current position of the vehicle is indicated on the map.
3. "Interactive map"



4. Select the destination with crosshairs.
   - To change the scale: turn the controller.
   - To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
   - To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

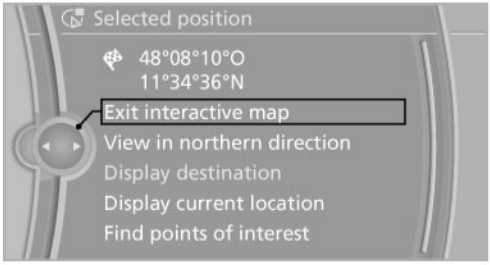
Specifying the street

If the system does not recognize a street, one of the following is displayed:

- The name of a street nearby.
- The county.
- The coordinates of the destination.

Additional functions

Additional functions are available on the interactive map after the controller is pressed.



- Select the symbol.

  "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
- "Exit interactive map": return to the map view.
- "View in northern direction" or "View in driving direction"
- "Display destination": the map section around the destination is displayed.
- "Display current location": the map section around your current location is displayed.
- "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Destination entry by voice

General information

- Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 22.
- When making a destination entry by voice, you can change between voice operation and iDrive.
- To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹

Saying the entries

- With the Professional navigation system: the town/city, street, and house number can be entered as a single command.
- Countries, towns and cities, streets, and intersections can be said as whole words or spelled, refer to page 83, in the language of the system.

  Example: to enter a town/city in a US state as a whole word, the language of the system must be English.
- Spell the entry if the spoken language and the language of the system differ.
- Say the letters smoothly, and avoid exaggerating the pronunciation and inserting lengthy pauses between the letters.
- The options available for entering data depend on the navigation data and the country and language settings.

With the Professional navigation system: entering an address in a command

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹
3. Wait for a request from the system.
4. Say the address in the suggested order.
5. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, such as the town/city.

Entering a town/city separately

The name of the town/city can be spoken as a word or spelled out.

With the destination entry menu displayed:

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹.
3. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.
4. Say the name of the town/city, or say at least the first three letters.

   Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.
5. Select the town/city.
   - To select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹
   - To select a different town/city: ›New entry‹
   - Select an entry: ›Entry ...‹ e.g., entry 2
   - To spell an entry: ›Spell city‹
6. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

Towns/cities of the same name are grouped in a list and displayed as one location followed by an ellipsis.

1. Select an entry: ›Yes‹ or ›Entry ...‹ e.g., entry 2.
2. Select the desired town/city.

Entering a street or intersection separately

Enter a street and intersection in the same way as you would enter a town/city.

Entering a house number separately

Depending on the data in the navigation system, house numbers up to number 2,000 can be entered.

CarManuals2.com

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.

Say each digit separately.

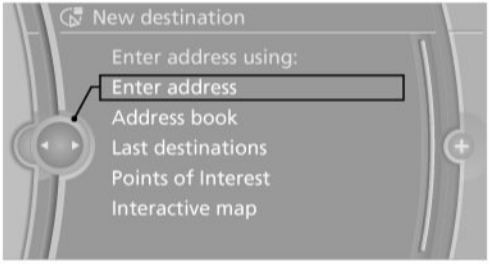
3. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

Planning a trip with intermediate destinations

New trip

A trip can be planned with several intermediate destinations.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left if necessary.
4. "Guidance"
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination entry.



7. Enter the intermediate destination.
8. "Start guidance"

Entering intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for one trip.

1. "Enter new destination"
2. Select the type of destination entry.
3. Enter the intermediate destination.
4. "Add as another destination"

   The intermediate destination is entered in the destination list and is highlighted.

5. Turn the controller until the intermediate destination is located in the desired position in the list.
6. Press the controller.

Starting the trip

1. After all intermediate destinations are entered, highlight the first destination.

   If the second destination, for example, is highlighted when destination guidance is started, the first destination is skipped.

2. "Start guidance"

   This symbol marks the active leg of the trip.

With the Professional navigation system: storing a trip

Up to 30 trips can be stored in the trip list. If necessary, delete existing trips to be able to store new trips.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"
3. Enter the name.
4. "OK"

With the Professional navigation system: selecting a stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select a stored trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Reversing the direction of travel

Intermediate destinations are displayed in reverse order in the list.

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

CarManuals2.com

Intermediate destination options

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip destinations"
4. Select an intermediate destination.
   - ▷ "Edit destination"
   - ▷ "Reposition dest. in the trip": move an intermediate destination to another position in the list.
   - ▷ "Delete dest. in the trip"
   - ▷ "Go to next dest. in the trip"

Some options are not available for certain trips.

With the Professional navigation system: deleting a stored trip

1. "Stored trips"
2. Highlight the desired trip.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip"

With the Professional navigation system: calling up the last trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. "Last trip"
4. "Start guidance"

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. Enter the destination, refer to page 150.
3. "Accept destination"
4. "Start guidance"

- ▷ The route is shown on the Control Display.
- ▷ The distance to the destination/intermediate destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed in the map view.
- ▷ The arrow view is shown in the instrument cluster, in the Head-up Display, and on the Control Display where appropriate.

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Guidance"
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

General information

- ▷ The route calculated can be influenced by selecting certain criteria.
- ▷ The route criteria can be changed when the destination is entered and during destination guidance.
- ▷ Road types are part of the navigation data and are taken into consideration when planning a route, such as when avoiding highways.
- ▷ The recommended route may differ from the route you would take based on personal experience.
- ▷ The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.
- ▷ Destination guidance with traffic bulletins, refer to page 164.

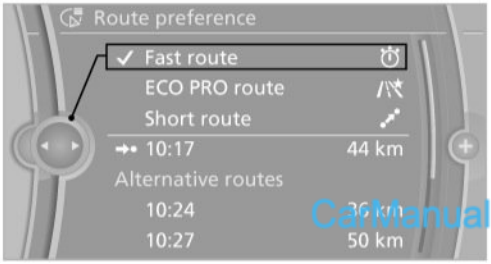
Changing the route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Select the criterion:

CarManuals2.com

- "Fast route": time-optimized route, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads.
- "ECO PRO route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest route.
- "Short route": short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be.
- "Alternative routes": if available, alternative routes are suggested during active route guidance.

  With the Professional navigation system: the individual suggestions are highlighted in color.



5. Specify additional criteria for the route, if necessary:
   - "Avoid highways": highways are avoided wherever possible.
   - "Avoid toll roads": toll roads are avoided wherever possible.
   - "Avoid ferries": ferries are avoided where possible.

Route

Different views of the route are available during destination guidance:

- Arrow view in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.
- List of route sections.
- Map view, refer to page 160.
- Arrow view in the Head-up Display, refer to page 117.

Arrow view

The following information is displayed during destination guidance:

- Large arrow: current direction of travel.
- Street name of the currently traveled street.
- Small arrow: indicates the next change in direction.
- Intersection view.
- Lane information.
- Traffic bulletins.
- Distance to the next change in direction.
- Street name at the next change in direction.

Lane information

On multi-lane roads, the recommended lanes are marked in the arrow view by a triangle.

- Solid triangle: best lane.
- Empty triangle: possible lane. However, another lane change may be needed shortly.

CarManuals2.com

Displaying list of route sections

When destination guidance is activated, a list of route sections can be displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Highlight route section.

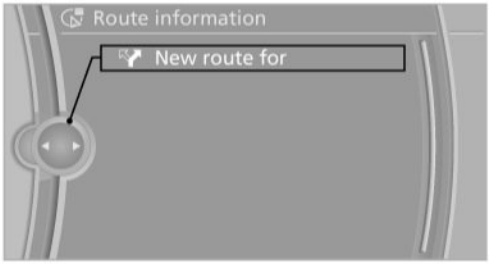
   With the Professional navigation system: the route section is displayed on the split screen.

Bypassing a section of the route

Calculate a new route for a route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"

3. "New route for"



4. Turn the controller. Enter the number of miles within which you would like to return to the original route.
5. Press the controller.

Resuming the original route

If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"
4. "Remove blocking"

CarManuals2.com

Gas station recommendation

The remaining range is calculated, and if necessary gas stations along the route are displayed.

Even with the most current navigation data, information regarding individual gas stations may have changed. For instance, certain gas stations may not be operating.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"

   A list of the gas stations is displayed.
4. Highlight a gas station.

   With the Professional navigation system: the position of the gas station is displayed on the split screen.
5. Select the gas station.
6. Select the symbol.
7. "Start guidance": destination guidance to the selected gas station is started.

   "Add as another destination": the gas station is added to the route.

Switching spoken instructions on/off

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Voice instructions"

Repeating spoken instructions

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Highlight the symbol.
4. Press the controller twice.

Volume of spoken instructions

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

Saving the spoken instructions on the programmable memory buttons

The function for switching the spoken instructions on/off can be stored on a programmable memory button, refer to page 20, for quick access.

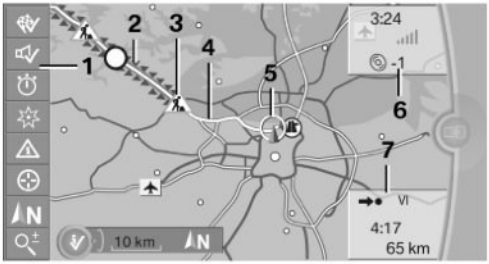
Map view

Selecting the map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

At a glance



1 Function bar
2 Route section with traffic obstruction
3 Traffic sign for traffic obstruction
4 Planned route
5 Current location
6 Upper status field
7 Lower status field

Lines in the map

Streets and routes are displayed in different colors and styles depending on their classification. Dashed lines represent railways and ferry connections. Country borders are indicated by thin lines.

Traffic obstructions

Small triangles along the planned route indicate route sections with traffic obstructions, depending on the map scale. The direction of the triangles indicates the direction of the obstruction.

The traffic signs indicate the significance of the obstruction.

- ▷ Red traffic sign: the obstruction affects the planned route or direction.
- ▷ Gray traffic sign: the obstruction does not affect the planned route or direction.

Traffic bulletins, refer to page 162.

CarManuals2.com

Planned route

After destination guidance is started, the planned route is displayed on the map.

Status fields

Show/hide: press the controller.

- ▷ Upper status field: time, telephone, and entertainment details.
- ▷ Lower status field: symbol for active destination guidance, status of traffic bulletins, time of arrival, and distance to destination.

Function bar

The following functions are available in the function bar:

Symbol	Function
	Start/end destination guidance.
	Switch spoken instructions on/off.
	Change the route criteria.
	Search for a special destination.
	Display traffic bulletins.
	Interactive map.
N	Set the map view.
	Change the scale.

To change to the function bar, move the controller to the left.

Changing the map section

"Interactive map"

- ▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
- ▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing the scale

1. Select the symbol.
2. To change the scale: turn the controller.

Automatically scaled map scale

In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until the AUTO scale is displayed. The map shows the entire route between the current location and the destination.

Settings for the map view

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"

Set the map view.

- "Day/night mode"

  Select and create the necessary settings depending on the light conditions.

  "Traffic conditions/gray map" active: the setting is disregarded.

- With the Professional navigation system:"Satellite images"

  Depending on availability and resolution, satellite images are displayed in a scale of approx. 1 mile to 600 miles/2 km to 1,000 km.

- With the Professional navigation system:"Perspective view in 3D"

  Prominent areas that are contained in the navigation data are displayed on the map in 3D.

- "Traffic conditions/gray map"

  The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins, refer to page 162. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

With the Professional navigation system: map view for split screen

The map view can be selected for the split screen independently from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen is selected.
4. Select "Split screen content" or the scale.
5. Select the map view.
   - "Arrow display"
   - "Map facing north"
   - "Map direction of travel"
   - "Map view with perspective"
   - "Position"
   - "Exit ramp view": selected blind driveways are displayed three dimensionally.

     Setting in some cases will affect the display in the Head-Up Display.
   - "Traffic conditions/gray map"
6. To change the scale: select the split screen and turn the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Traffic bulletins

At a glance

General information

- Display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TI Traffic Information of a traffic information service. Information on traffic obstructions and hazards is updated continuously.

  Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

  An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the

End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to licensee "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. or BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

- ▷ The traffic bulletins are indicated on the map by symbols.
- ▷ The traffic bulletins for the surrounding area are stored in a list.

  ⚠ The symbol in the function bar of the map view turns red if there are traffic bulletins that affect the calculated route.

Switching the reception on/off

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Receive Traffic Info"

Opening the traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. ⚠ "Traffic Info"

   First the traffic bulletins for the calculated route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are sorted by their distance from the current position of the vehicle.
4. Select a traffic bulletin.

   "More information": display additional information.
5. Scroll to the next or previous traffic bulletin if required.

CarManuals2.com

Traffic bulletins on the map

General information

"Traffic conditions/gray map" Active: indication on the control display is switched to shades of gray. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins. Day/night mode is not taken into account in this setting. Symbols and special destinations are not displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic conditions/gray map"

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

Additional information in the map view

CarManuals2.com

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction, and impact are displayed in the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route.

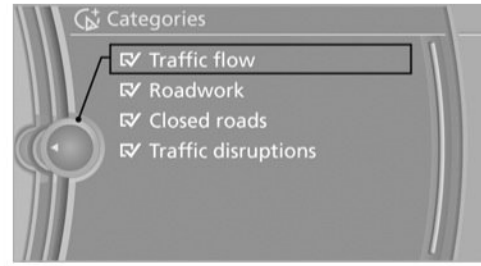
- Red: congestion.
- Orange: stop-and-go traffic.
- Yellow: heavy traffic.
- Green: clear roads.
- Gray: general traffic bulletins, e.g., construction site.

The displayed information depends on the particular traffic information service.

Filtering traffic bulletins

You can set which traffic bulletins appear on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired categories.



Traffic bulletins of the selected category are displayed on the map.

- Traffic bulletins that are relevant to the route are always shown.
- For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

Destination guidance with traffic bulletins

General information

Detour suggestions from the navigation system can be manually accepted in the semi-dynamic destination guidance. In the dynamic destination guidance, they are automatically accepted in the route guidance.

Semi-dynamic destination guidance

When traffic bulletin reception is switched on, semi-dynamic destination guidance is active.

The destination guidance system takes the available traffic information into account. A message is displayed depending on the route, the traffic bulletins, and the possible detour routes. When there is a traffic obstruction, if possible, a detour is offered.

The top part of the message displays:

- The symbol of the first traffic obstruction, including the distance at which the traffic obstruction first occurs, if applicable.

- The overall length of the traffic obstructions on the route.
- The extended driving time due to the traffic obstructions.

The bottom part of the message displays:

- The recommended detour with the distance remaining until the detour starts.
- The difference in the route length compared to the original route.
- Time gained using the detour compared to the original route with the traffic obstructions.

With the Professional navigation system: in addition to displaying the original route in white, the split screen also displays the detour.

Accepting the detour

"Detour"

In the event of special hazards, e. g., objects on the road, a message is displayed without a detour suggestion.

Detours can also be accepted if the traffic messages are called up in the list.

CarManuals2.com

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Traffic Info"
4. "Detour information"
5. "Detour"

Dynamic destination guidance

The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions.

- The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.
- Traffic bulletins continue to be displayed on the map.
- Depending on road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.
- Dangerous situations are displayed regardless of the setting.

Activating dynamic destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

Navigation data

Information on the navigation data

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version": information on the data version is displayed.

Updating the navigation data

General information

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Current navigation data and the authorization code are available from your service center.

- Depending on the data volume, a data update may take several hours.
- Update during the trip to preserve battery.
- During the update, only the basic functions of the navigation system are available.
- The status of the update can be viewed.
- The system restarts after the update.
- Remove the data carrier with the navigation data after the update.

Professional navigation system: performing an update

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

3. Enter the navigation DVD authorization code.
4. Change the DVD, if necessary.

After interrupting your trip, follow the instructions on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

Viewing the status

1. 

Press the button.
2. "Navigation update"

What to do if...

- The current transmission position cannot be displayed?

  The vehicle is located in an unrecognized region, is in a poor reception area, or the system is currently determining the position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.
- The destination without street information is not used for route guidance?

  When city has been input, no downtown can be determined.

  Input any street in the selected city and start destination guidance.
- The destination is not used for route guidance?

  The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- Letters for destination input cannot be selected?

  The stored data do not contain the data of the destination.

  Select a goal that is as close as possible to the original.
- Is the map displayed in shades of gray?

  "Traffic conditions/gray map" Active: indication on the control display is switched to shades of gray. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins.
- Spoken instructions are no longer output during route guidance in front of intersections?

  The area has not yet been fully recorded, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Entertainment

The chapter helps assure your enjoyment when receiving radio and television stations and playing CDs, DVDs and tracks from the music collection.

CarManuals2.com

Tone

Vehicle equipment

CarManuals2.com

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

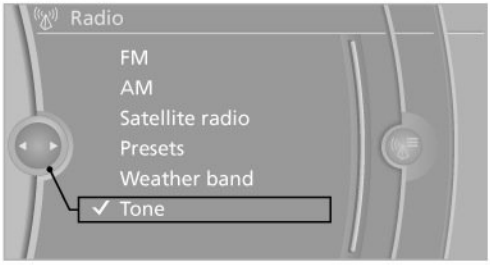
The sound settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Treble, bass, balance, and fader

- "Treble": treble adjustment.
- "Bass": depth adjustment.
- "Balance": left/right volume distribution.
- "Fader": front/rear volume distribution.

Setting treble, bass, balance, and fader

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"



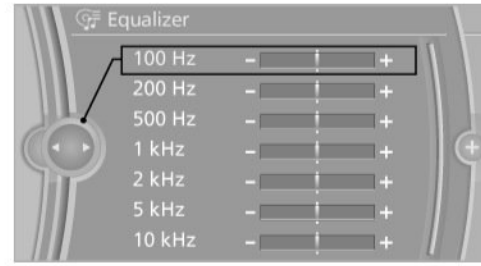
3. Select the desired tone settings.
4. To adjust: turn the controller.
5. To store: press the controller.

Equalizer

Setting for individual audio frequency ranges.

Adjusting the equalizer

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Equalizer"
4. Select the desired setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Multi-channel playback, surround

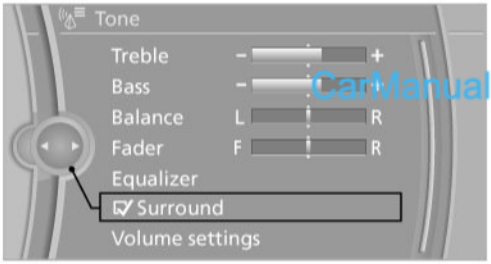
Choose between stereo and multi-channel playback, surround.

Setting multi-channel playback, surround

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

3. "Surround"



When surround is activated, multi-channel playback is simulated when a stereo audio track is played.

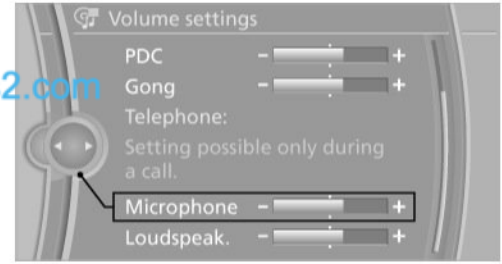
Volume

- "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control.
- "PDC": volume of the PDC signal compared to the entertainment sound output.
- "Gong": volume of the signal, e. g., the safety belt reminder, compared to the entertainment sound output.
- "Microphone": volume of the microphone during a phone call.
- "Loudspeak.": volume of the loudspeakers during a phone call.

The following volumes are only stored for the respective paired telephone: "Microphone", "Loudspeak.".

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Resetting the tone settings

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

Opening the tone settings in the Options menu

1. "CD/Multimedia" or "Radio"
2. If necessary, select additional entries, for example, "FM" or "CD/DVD".
3. Open "Options".
4. "Tone"
5. Set the desired tone.

CarManuals2.com

Radio

Vehicle equipment

CarManuals2.com

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Controls



1 Change entertainment sources
2 Change station/track
3 Programmable memory buttons
4 Volume, on/off
5 Change wave band

Sound output

Switching on/off

When the ignition is switched off: press ON/OFF button on the radio.

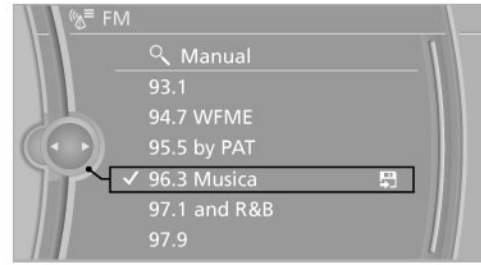
Muting

When the ignition is switched on or the engine is running: press the ON/OFF button on the radio.

AM/FM station

Selecting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.



All saved stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

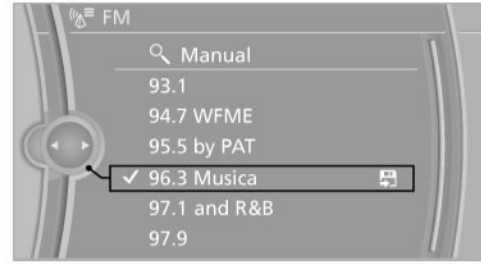
Changing the station



Press the button.

Storing a station

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Highlight the desired station.



4. Press the controller for an extended period.
5. Select the desired memory location.

The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

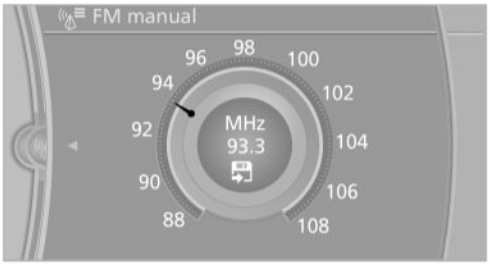
The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection via the frequency.

CarManuals2.com

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. To select the frequency: turn the controller.



To store the station: press the controller for an extended period.

Renaming a station

A station with changing station names can be renamed.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename to:"

   If necessary, wait until the desired name appears.

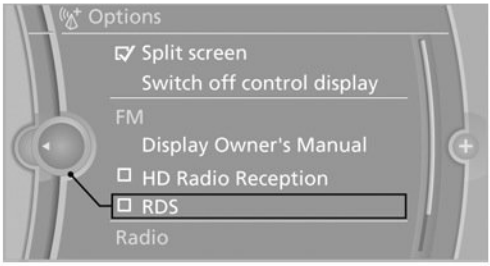
The selected station name is copied to the list of current stations and stored stations.

RDS

RDS broadcasts additional information, such as the station name, in the FM wave band.

Switching the RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "RDS"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio™ reception

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U. S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "HD Radio Reception"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD This symbol is displayed in the status line when the audio signal is digital.

When setting a station with a digital signal, it may take a few seconds before the station plays in digital quality.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, the playback switches between analog and digital reception. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

This symbol indicates that a main station also broadcasts additional substations. The station name of the main station ends in HD1. Station names of the substations end in HD2, HD3, etc.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

When reception is poor, the substation is muted.

Satellite radio

General information

The channels are offered in predefined packages. The packages must be enabled by telephone.

Navigation bar overview

Symbol	Function
	Change the list view.
	Select the category.
	Direct channel entry.
	Timeshift
	Open the My Favorites category/ open a favorite.
	Manage the favorites.
	Traffic Jump

The functions of the navigation bar symbols can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

Managing a subscription

To be able to enable or unsubscribe from the channels, you must have reception. It is usually at its best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky. The channel name is displayed in the status line.

Enabling channels

The Unsubscribed Channels category contains all disabled channels.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"



4. Select the Unsubscribed Channels category.
5. Select the desired channel.

CarManuals2.com

The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

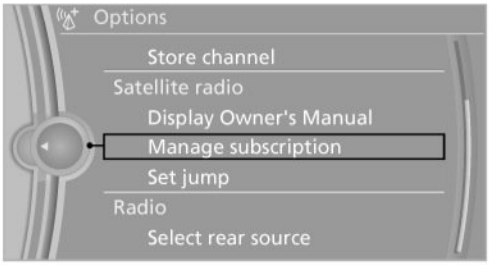
6. Select the phone number to have the channel enabled.



You can unsubscribe from the channels again via this phone number.

Unsubscribing from channels

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Manage subscription"



5. The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Call Sirius to unsubscribe from the channels.

Selecting channels

You can only listen to enabled channels.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.

CarManuals2.com



Via the buttons on the center console



Press the button.

The next channel is selected.

Via direct channel entry

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Set channel"
4. Turn the controller until the desired channel is reached and press the controller.

Storing a channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.

6. Press the controller again to confirm the highlighted channel.



7. Select the desired memory location.

The channels are stored for the remote control currently in use.

The channels can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

Changing the list view

The list view changes every time the first symbol on the navigation bar is pressed.

Information on the channel is displayed.

Symbol	Meaning
	Channel name
	Artist
	Track

Selecting a category

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"
4. Select the desired category.

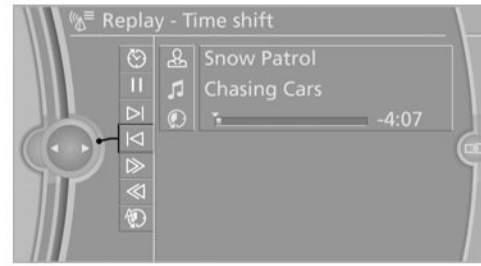
Timeshift

Approx. one hour of the program being broadcast on the channel currently being listened to is stored in a buffer. Prerequisite: the signal must be available.

The stored audio track can be played with a delay following the live broadcast. When the buffer is full, the older tracks are overwritten. The buffer is cleared when a new channel is selected.

Opening the timeshift function

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"



- The red arrow shows the current playback position.
- The time difference to the live broadcast is displayed next to the buffer bar.

  For live transmissions: "live".

Timeshift menu

Symbol	Function
	Go to the live broadcast
	Playback/pause
	Next track
	Previous track
	Fast forward
	Reverse
	Automatic timeshift deactivated/activated

Automatic timeshift

When the function is activated, audio playback is stopped automatically in the event of:

- Incoming and outgoing telephone calls.
- Activation of the voice activation system.

CarManuals2.com

▷ Muting.

The audio playback then continues with a time delay.

To activate:

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"
4. "Automatic time shift"

To deactivate: "Automatic time shift".

Storing favorites

Up to 30 favorites can be stored in the favorites list. Available favorites are artist, track, game, league, and team.

Storing the artist, track, or game

It is only possible to store favorites that are currently being broadcast. The channel information must be available.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Select the artist, track, or game.

Storing the league or team

Leagues or teams can be added to the favorites from a selection list.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Manage favorites"

CarManuals2.com

4. "Add sports information"



5. Select the league.
6. Select "Add all teams" or the desired team.

Opening the favorites

If an activated favorite is played back, the following message appears for approx. 20 seconds: "Favorite alert!".

"Favorites"

Select the symbol while the message is shown.



The displayed favorite is played.

If there is no message, the system changes to the My Favorites category. All favorites currently being broadcast can be selected from a list.

Managing the favorites

Activating/deactivating the favorites

Favorites can be activated and deactivated globally and individually.

1. "Satellite radio"
2. "Manage favorites"
3. Select "Activate alert" or the desired favorites.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting favorites

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ☆+ "Manage favorites"
3. Highlight the desired favorite.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

CarManuals2.com

Traffic Jump

Traffic and weather information for a selected region is broadcast every few minutes.

Selecting a region

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Set jump"
5. Select the desired region.

The region is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating/deactivating the jump

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Jump to:"

Information for the selected region is broadcast as soon as it is available.

A new panel opens.

Canceling the Traffic Jump: "Cancel".

Symbol	Meaning
	Information will be broadcast shortly.
	Information is currently being broadcast.

Select one of the symbols to deactivate Traffic Jump.

Automatic update

About twice a year, Sirius performs an update of the channel names and positions. The update takes place automatically and may take several minutes.

Notes

- Reception may not be available in some situations, such as under certain environmental or topographic conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
- The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages next to tall buildings or near trees, mountains or other powerful sources of radio interference.

Stored stations

General information

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"



4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Delete entry"

CarManuals2.com

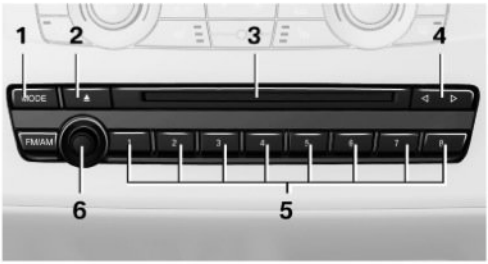
CD/multimedia

Vehicle equipment

CarManuals2.com

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Controls



1 Change the entertainment source
2 Eject CD/DVD
3 CD/DVD drive
4 Change station/track
5 Programmable memory buttons
6 Volume, on/off

Sound output

Switching on/off

When the ignition is switched off: press ON/OFF button on the radio.

Muting

When the ignition is switched on or the engine is running: press the ON/OFF button on the radio.

CD/DVD

Playback

Loading the CD/DVD player

Insert the CD/DVD with the printed side up.

Playback begins automatically.

Reading can take a few minutes with compressed audio files.

Starting playback

A CD/DVD is located in the CD/DVD player or DVD changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.



Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player
...	DVD changer

Playable formats

- DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video.
- CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD, SVCD.
- Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC, M4A.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

CD/DVD removal

1. Press the button.
   The CD/DVD is partially ejected.
2. Remove the CD/DVD.

CarManuals2.com

Audio playback

Selecting the track using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired track is played.

Selecting the track using the iDrive

Audio CDs



Select the desired track to begin playback.

CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

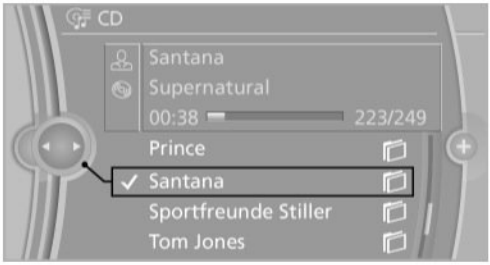
1. Select the directory if necessary.
   To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.



2. Select the desired track to begin playback.



Displaying information on the track



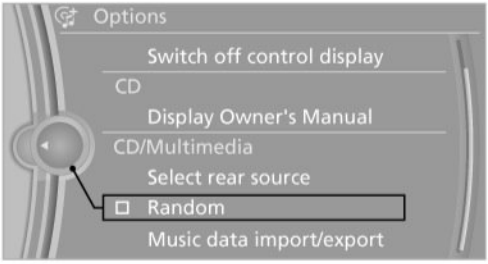
If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- Interpret.
- Album track.
- Number of tracks on the CD/DVD.
- File name of track.

Random playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.

4. Open "Options".
5. "Random"



All tracks of the CD/DVD are played back in random order.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button.

Video playback

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on the DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Playback

The video image is displayed on the front Control Display up to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h; in some countries, it is only displayed if the parking brake is set or if the automatic transmission is in position P.

DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. DVD "DVD menu"



VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD with video content.
4. "Select track"
5. Select the desired track.

Video menu

To open the video menu: turn the controller during playback.

Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

Symbol	Function
DVD	Open the DVD menu.
▷	Start playback.
II	Pause
□	Stop
▷|	Next chapter
|◁	Previous chapter

CarManuals2.com

Symbol	Function
⏩	Fast forward
⏪	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the video menu.
2. DVD "DVD menu"

   The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.
3. To select menu items: move the controller and press it.

To change to the video menu: turn the controller and press it.

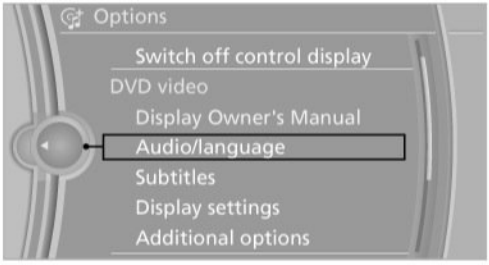
DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on the DVD.

Selecting the language

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"

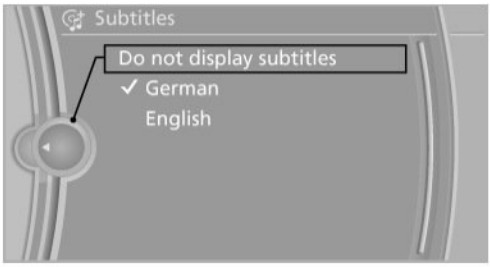


4. Select the desired language.

Selecting the subtitles

The subtitles that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"
4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".



Setting the brightness, contrast and color

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"



5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

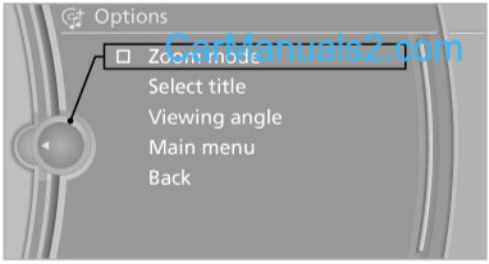
Selecting the zoom

Display the video image on the entire screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".

CarManuals2.com

3. "Additional options"
4. "Zoom mode"



CarManuals2.com

Selecting a track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller when the DVD menu is displayed.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Select title"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1. "Select track"
2. Select the desired track.

Selecting the camera angle

The availability of a different camera angle depends on the DVD and the current DVD track.

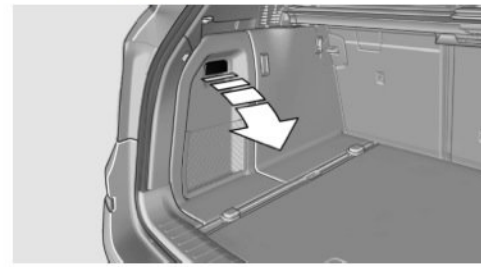
1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

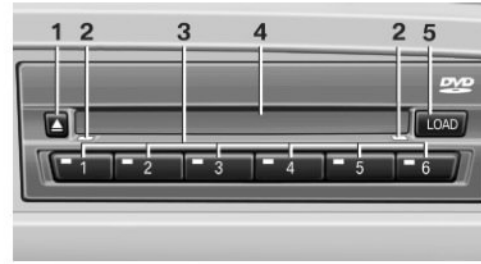
DVD changer

In the cargo area



The DVD changer is stored behind the left side trim in the cargo area.

Controls and displays



1 Empty DVD compartments
2 LED on DVD slot
3 Buttons for DVD compartments
4 DVD slot
5 Load DVD compartments

Loading the DVD compartments individually

1. LOAD Press the button once.
   The LED on the first empty compartment flashes.
2. Select another compartment if necessary.
3. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to flash.
4. Insert a single CD or DVD in the middle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically and placed into the selected compartment.

Sliding in CDs/DVDs

Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the DVD changer could be damaged.

Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◄

CarManuals2.com

Loading all empty DVD compartments

1. LOAD Press the button once and hold it down.

   The LEDs on the empty CD compartments flash.
2. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to begin flashing and then insert each CD or DVD into the center of the slot.

   The CDs/DVDs are drawn in automatically and placed into the empty compartments.

Sliding in CDs/DVDs

Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the DVD changer could be damaged.

Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◄

After they are inserted, it may take several minutes for the CDs/DVDs to be read in.

Removing a single CD/DVD

1. Press the button once.
2. Select the DVD compartment.

   The CD/DVD is partially ejected.
3. Remove the CD/DVD.

Removing all CDs/DVDs

1. Press the button once and hold it down.
2. Remove the CDs/DVDs.

Cancelling a function

Filling the DVD compartments or removing CDs/DVDs can be canceled.

Press the corresponding button.

▷ LOAD

▷

Malfunctions

If the LEDs on the DVD slot and on the compartments are flashing rapidly, a malfunction has occurred.

To eliminate the malfunction:

1. Press one of the following buttons:

   ▷ LOAD

   ▷

   The CD/DVD last inserted is ejected.
2. Remove the CD/DVD.

The DVD changer is functional again after the LEDs stop flashing rapidly.

Audio playback

The audio track of a DVD can be played back even if video playback is not possible in the vehicle.

Only the main film without the previews or extras can be played back.

Starting playback

A DVD is located in the DVD changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.

Selecting a chapter using the button

◁ ▷ Press the button repeatedly until the desired chapter is played.

Selecting a chapter using iDrive

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Select the desired chapter.

Fast forward/reverse



Press and hold the button.

Selecting the language

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Audio/language"
6. Select the desired language.

Notes

CD/DVD player and changer



Do not remove the cover

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged; otherwise, severe eye damage may occur.◄

CDs and DVDs



Use of CDs/DVDs

- Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied, as these can become detached during playback due to heat buildup and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
- Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g., single CDs; otherwise, the CDs or the adapter may jam and no longer eject.
- Do not use combined CDs/DVDs, e.g., DVD Plus, as the CDs/DVDs can jam and will no longer eject.◄

CarManuals2.com

General malfunctions

- CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.
- If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens, and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions involving individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes:

Home-recorded CDs/DVDs

- Possible reasons for malfunctions with home-recorded CDs/DVDs are inconsistent data creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the blank CD/DVD.
- Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damage

- Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
- Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
- Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F/50 °C, high humidity or direct sunlight.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

CarManuals2.com

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered US patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media protected by this product - unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision - may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

DTS Digital Surround™

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent Numbers: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & and other patents granted and registered in the USA and worldwide. DTS and the logo are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS Inc. © DTS, Inc. All rights reserved.

Music collection

Storing music

General information

Music tracks from CDs/DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection on a hard disc in the vehicle and played from there.

- Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.
- CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. The WMA, MP3, M4A, and AAC formats are stored. Individual tracks and directories can be deleted later, Deleting a track and directory, refer to page 191.

  Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored but cannot be played back.

Backing up music data

Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disk.◄

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Storing from a CD/DVD

1. Insert a CD or DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"



The music collection is displayed and the first track of the CD/DVD is played back. During the

storage process, the tracks are played in sequence.

Observe the following during the storage process:

Do not switch to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player as this will interrupt the storage process. You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD that have already been stored can be called up.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. "Storing..."



4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD/DVD continues at the beginning of the track at which storage was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

To update the database, contact your service center.

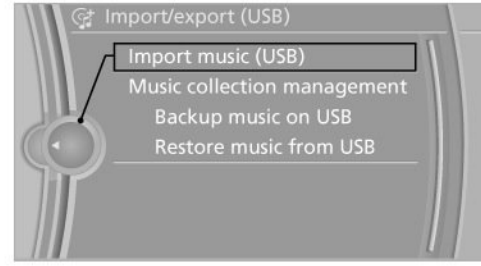
CarManuals2.com

Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

- Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.
- Unsuitable devices: USB hard drives, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone. Music from the Apple iPod/iPhone can be played via the USB audio interface in the center armrest.
- File systems: popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT 32 is the recommended format.

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment, refer to page 133.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"



Playing music

Music search

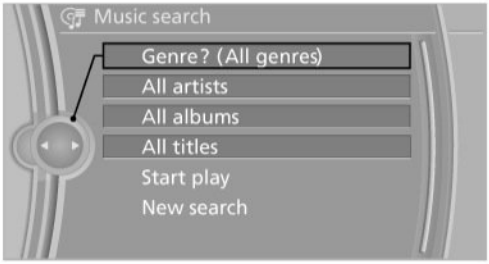
All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music

search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding album, refer to page 190.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"



4. Select the desired category.



5. Select the desired entry:
   - ▷ Select "A-Z search", refer to page 21, and input the desired entry.
   - ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select other categories if you wish.

   The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.

   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

   The list of tracks is repeated automatically.

Restarting the music search

"New search"

Music search using spoken instructions

Instructions for the voice activation system, refer to page 22.

CarManuals2.com

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Music search‹
3. Open the desired category, e.g., ›Select artist‹.
4. Say the desired entry in the list.
5. Select other categories if you wish.

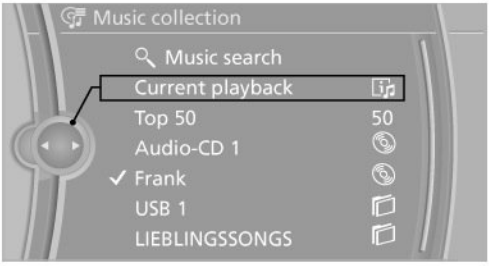
To select a track directly: ›Title ...‹.

Say the voice command and the name of the desired track in a single command.

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search, or the album that was selected last.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Current playback"



4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Top 50

The 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

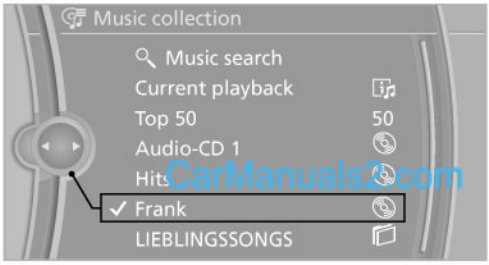
Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

   Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.



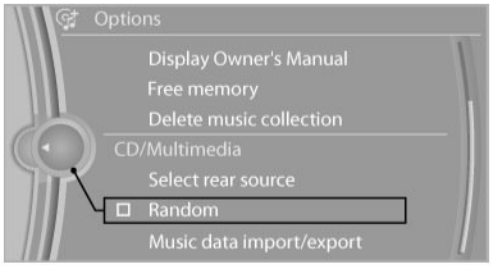
4. Change directories if needed to select tracks.

   To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.

Random playback

All tracks of the selection are played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"



Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is not available, it can be changed later if desired.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"



6. Select the letters individually.

CarManuals2.com

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a track and directory

A track cannot be deleted while it is being played.

A directory cannot be deleted while a track from that directory is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track"

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Music collection

Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB device. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours.

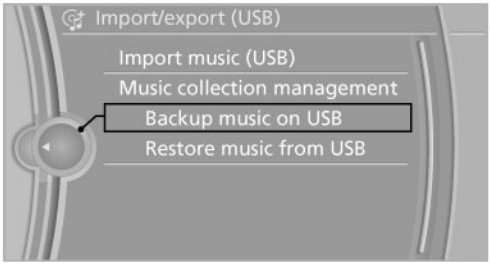
CarManuals2.com

Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Starting the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"



7. "Backup music on USB"



Storing the music collection in the vehicle

When storing from the USB device, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

CarManuals2.com

External devices

At a glance

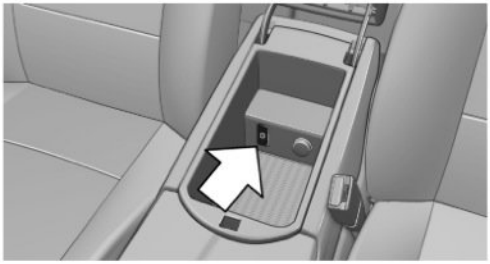
Symbol	Meaning
	AUX-IN port
	USB audio interface
	Mobile phone audio interface
	Bluetooth audio

AUX-IN port

At a glance

- For connecting audio devices, e.g., MP3 player. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.
- Recommendation: use medium tone and volume settings on the audio device. The tone depends on the quality of the audio files.

Connecting



The AUX-IN port is located in the center armrest.

Connect the headphones or line-out connector of the device to the jack plug.

Playback

1. Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track on the audio device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. If necessary. "External devices".
4. "AUX front"

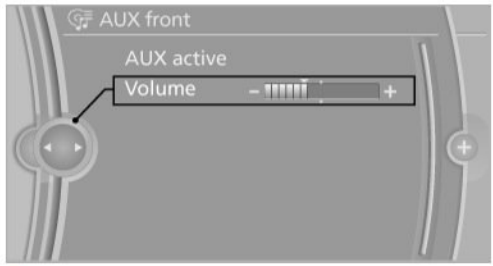
The sound is played back on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Volume

The volume of the sound output is dependent on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If necessary. "External devices".
3. "AUX front"
4. "Volume"



5. Turn the controller until the desired volume is set and press the controller.

USB audio interface/mobile phone audio interface

At a glance

It is possible to connect external audio devices. Operation can be performed via iDrive. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Connectors for external devices

- Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g., MP3 players, USB flash drives, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
- Connection via snap-in adapter when equipped with extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone or mobile phones.

  Playback is only possible when there is no audio device attached to the AUX-IN port.

Due to the large number of different audio devices available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio device/mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.

Ask your service center about suitable audio devices/mobile phones.

Audio files

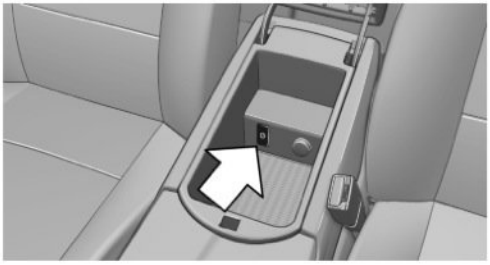
Standard audio files can be played back:

- MP3.
- WMA.
- WAV (PCM).
- AAC, M4A.
- Playback lists: M3U, WPL, PLS.

File systems

Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT 32 is the recommended format.

Connection of Apple iPod/iPhone via USB audio interface



USB audio interface is located in the center armrest.

To connect the device, use the special cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone, available from your service center, or a flexible adapter cable.



Connect the Apple iPod/iPhone with the AUX-IN port and USB interface using the special cable adapter or with the USB interface using the flexible adapter cable.

The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

Connection of a USB device via the USB audio interface



CarManuals2.com

USB audio interface is located in the center armrest.

Connect using a flexible adapter cable to protect the USB audio interface and the USB device against physical damage.



Connect the USB device to the USB interface.

After connecting for the first time

Information on all music tracks, e.g. artist or type of music, as well as playback lists are transmitted into the vehicle. This may take some time, depending on the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

Number of tracks

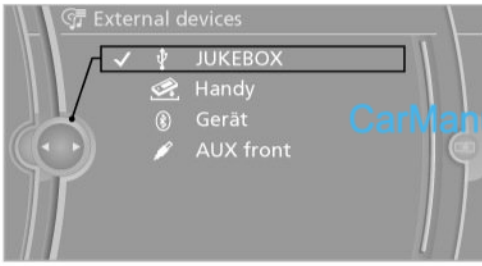
Information from up to four USB devices or for approx. 16,000 or 36,000 tracks can be stored in the vehicle. If a fifth device is connected or if more than 16,000 or 36,000 tracks are stored, information on existing tracks may be deleted.

Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.

Playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the or symbol.



The playback starts with the first track.

On the split screen, the CD cover for the music track might be displayed after a few seconds.

Track search

Selection is possible via:

- Playback lists.
- Information: type of music, artist, and, if available, composer, album, track.
- In addition, for USB devices: file directory and, if available, composer.

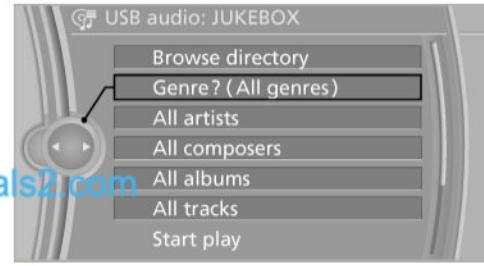
Tracks are displayed if they have been saved in the Latin alphabet.

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the or symbol.
4. "Search"
5. Select the desired category, e.g., "Genre" or "Artist".

   All entries are displayed in a list.

   - Open "A-Z search" and input the desired entry. When a letter is entered, the results are filtered using this letter as the first letter. If multiple letters are entered, all results that contain that sequence are displayed.
   - Select the desired entry from the list.



CarManuals2.com

6. Select other categories if you wish.

   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, if all of the tracks by a certain artist are to be displayed, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Playback lists

Calling up playback lists.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the or symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the or symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random playback

The current list of tracks is played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button.

Video playback

At a glance

Video playback via snap-in adapter is possible. Operation can be performed via iDrive. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Playback

The video image is displayed on the front Control Display up to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h; in some countries, it is only displayed if the parking brake is set or if the automatic transmission is in position P.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Video"
5. Select the directory if necessary.

   To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.
6. Select the desired video file to begin playback.

Video menu

Symbol	Function
	Next video file
	Previous video file Double-click on an icon to play back previous video file.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the audio device operating instructions.

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g., bit rates greater than 256 kbit/s, the files may not play back correctly in each case.

Information on connection

- The connected audio device is supplied with a max. power of 500 mA if supported by the device. Therefore, do not additionally connect the device to a socket in the vehicle; otherwise, playback may be compromised.
- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- Do not connect USB hard drives.
- Do not use the USB audio interface to recharge external devices.

Bluetooth audio

CarManuals2.com

At a glance

- Music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones can be played back via Bluetooth.

Use of a mobile phone as an audio source, refer to page 205.

- The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.
- The volume of the sound output is dependent on the device. If necessary, adjust the volume on the device.
- Up to four external devices can be paired with the vehicle.

Requirements

- The device is suitable. Information under www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.
- The device is ready for operation.
- The ignition is switched on.
- Bluetooth is activated on the vehicle, refer to page 205, and on the device.
- Bluetooth presettings must be made on the device, such as for a connection without confirmation or visibility; refer to the device operating instructions.
- A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits is defined as the Bluetooth passkey. It is only required once for pairing.

Pairing and connecting

Pairing a device

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the device while the vehicle is stationary.◀

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4. "Add new phone"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

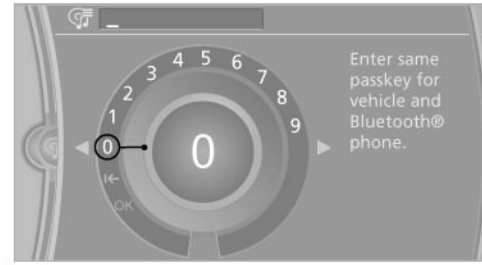


CarManuals2.com

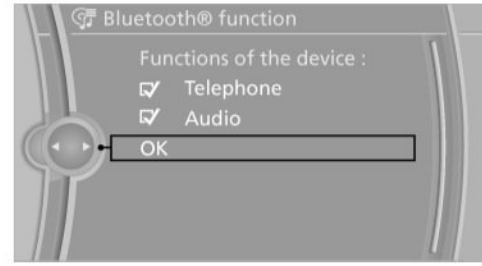
5. Perform additional steps on the device, refer to the device operating instructions: e.g. search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the device display.
6. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the device display.

   Prompt via iDrive or the device to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.
7. Enter the passkey and confirm.



8. Select the desired functions with which the device is to be connected, e.g. "Audio".
9. "OK"



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

If pairing was successful, the device is displayed as connected.

White symbol ♫: the device is active as an audio source.

CarManuals2.com

If pairing was unsuccessful: What to do if..., refer to page 198.

Connecting a specific device

A device that has already been paired can be connected as an active audio source.

Connecting is not possible when data is exchanged via a mobile phone connected via Bluetooth.

Requirements

If necessary, activate the audio connection of the desired device from the list of paired devices.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.
5. "Options" Open.
6. "Configure phone"
7. "Audio"
8. "OK"

Connecting the device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.



White symbol ♫: the device is active as an audio source.

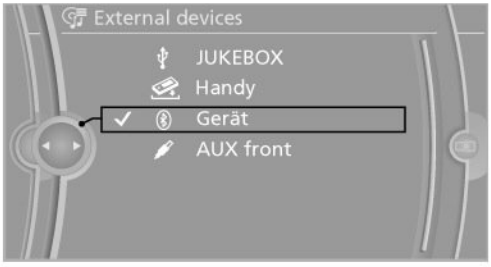
Playback

General information

- The display of music track information depends on the device.
- Operation can takes place on the device or iDrive.
- Playback is interrupted when data is exchanged via a mobile phone connected via Bluetooth.

Starting playback

1. Connect the device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "External devices"
4. Select the symbol.



5. Select the desired track from the list, if necessary.

Playback menu

Depending on the particular device, some of the functions may not be available.

Symbol	Function
⏭	Next track Fast forward: press and hold the symbol.
⏮	Previous music track Reverse: press and hold the symbol.

CarManuals2.com

Track search

Music track search is possible depending on the device.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Search device content"
5. ▷ "A-Z search"
   ▷ Select the desired entry or directory.

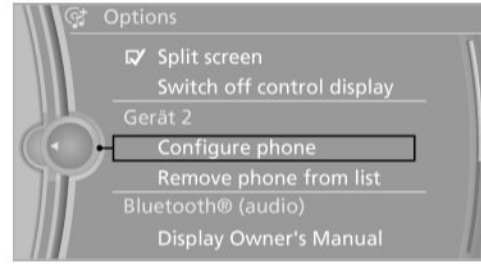
Playback mode

Depending on the device, different programs for playing back music files might be available.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Select player"
6. Select the desired channel.

Disconnecting the audio connection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. Highlight the desired device.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Configure phone"



6. "Audio"
7. "OK"

Unpairing a device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4. Highlight the device that is to be unpaired.
5. Open "Options".
6. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

Information on suitable devices can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Suitable mobile phones, refer to page 204.

The device is not supported by the vehicle.

▷ Perform a software update, refer to page 199, if needed.

The device could not be paired or connected.

▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the device and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the device and via iDrive.

▷ Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.

▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the device or vehicle? Delete connections with other devices if necessary.

▷ Is the mobile phone in power-save mode or does it have only a limited remaining battery life? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or via the charging cable.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

- Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible that only one device can be connected to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and pair and connect only one device.
- The device no longer reacts? Switch the device off and on again.
- Repeat the pairing procedure.

Music cannot be played back.

- Start the program for playing back music data on the device and select a track on the device if necessary.
- Switch the radio off and on again.

Music files can only be played back softly.

- Adjust the volume settings on the device.

Playback is disturbed when buttons are pressed or by other messages on the device.

- Switch off the button tones and other signal tones on the device.

Playback is interrupted by a telephone call or traffic bulletin and is not resumed automatically.

- Switch the radio off and on again.

Playback is not possible if the mobile phone is connected both via Bluetooth Audio and via the extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone.

- Disconnect one of the two connections; for example, disconnect the audio connection, refer to page 198, and restart playback.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline or service center.

Software Update

The vehicle supports various external devices depending on the current software version. With a software update, the vehicle can support new cell phones or new external device, for example.

The updating of the software is done via:

- USB.

Updates and related current information is available at www.bmw.com/update.

CarManuals2.com

Displaying the current version

The currently installed software is displayed.

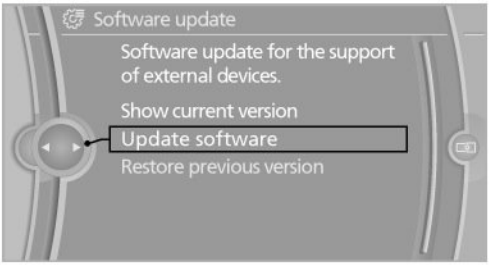
1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Show current version"

SelectDesired version to displayAdditional information.

Updating software via USB

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Store the file for the software-update in the main director of a USB flash drive.
2. Insert the USB flash drive into the USB interface of the USB audio interface in the center armrest. An update via the USB interface in the glove compartment is not possible.
3. "Settings"
4. "Software update"
5. "Update software"



6. "Start update"
7. "OK"

All listed software updates are installed.

Restoring the previous version

The software version before the last software update can be restored.

The previous version may only be restored when the vehicle is stationary.

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Restore previous version"
4. "OK" Double-click.

All listed software updates are removed.

CarManuals2.com

Note

While the software is being updated or a previous version is being restored, BMW Assist, Office functions and the connected devices are temporarily unavailable. Wait several minutes for the functions to become available again.

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Communication

All of the options available to you for mobile communication with family, friends, business partners, and service providers are described in this chapter.

CarManuals2.com

Telephone

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance

The concept

Mobile phones or other external devices such as audio players can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

After these devices are paired once, they are recognized automatically when the ignition is switched on as soon as they are inside the vehicle and can be operated via iDrive, the buttons on the steering wheel, and via voice activation.

Depending on their functionality, external devices can be used via the vehicle as a telephone or as an audio source. The telephone functions are described in the following.

Up to four external devices can be paired.

Certain functions may need to be enabled by the mobile phone provider or service provider.

Using the mobile phone while driving

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◄

Snap-in adapter

The snap-in adapter is used to:

- Hold the mobile phone.
- Recharge the battery.
- Connect the mobile phone to an outside antenna of the vehicle.

  This provides for better network reception and consistent sound quality.

Approved mobile phones

Details on which mobile phones and external devices with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package can be obtained at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are needed to determine which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone preparation package. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

CarManuals2.com

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth® info"
4. "Display system information"

These approved mobile phones with a certain software version, support the vehicle functions described below.

Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones or software versions.

Do not operate a mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle on the mobile phone keypad, as this may lead to a malfunction.

Notes

At high temperatures, the charge function of the mobile phone can be limited where appropriate and the functions are no longer executed.

When the mobile phone is used via the vehicle, heed the operating manual of the mobile phone.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Pairing/unpairing the mobile phone

General information

The following functions are available:

- Use of a mobile phone as a telephone.
- Use of a mobile phone as an additional telephone.
- Use of a mobile phone as an audio source.
- Use of an audio device as an audio source.

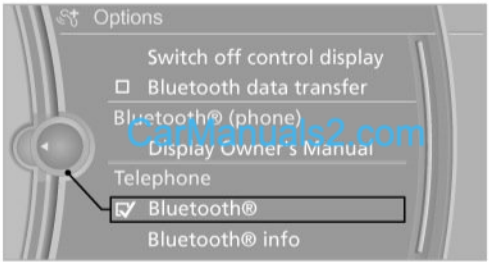
Requirements

- The mobile phone is suitable.
- The mobile phone is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone.
- Bluetooth presettings may need to be made on the mobile phone, e.g., for a connection without confirmation or visibility, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.
- Deactivate Bluetooth audio if necessary.
- A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits was defined as the Bluetooth passkey. It is only required once for pairing.
- The ignition is switched on.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth®"



CarManuals2.com

Additional functions

Activating/deactivating the additional functions

Activate the functions before pairing to be able to use them in the vehicle. Information on suitable mobile phones that support these functions, refer to page 204.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Configure Bluetooth®"
5. Select the desired additional function.
   - "Additional telephone"
   - "Office"
   - "Bluetooth® audio"
6. "OK"

As long as an additional function is deactivated, it cannot be assigned to a telephone.

Additional telephone

A mobile phone can be used as an additional telephone.

The additional telephone can be used to accept incoming calls, refer to page 208. While a call is active on the additional telephone, incoming calls are displayed on the Control Display.

Audio source

A mobile phone can be used as an audio source.

Pairing and connecting

Pairing the mobile phone

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the mobile phone while the vehicle is stationary.◂

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

3. "Add new phone"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions: e.g. search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.

5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

6. You are prompted by the iDrive or mobile phone to enter the same Bluetooth passkey. Enter the passkey and confirm.

   Or

   Compare the control number in the display of the vehicle to the control number in the display of the mobile phone. Confirm the control number in the mobile phone and in the vehicle.

   "OK"

7. Select the functions for which the mobile phone is to be used.

8. "OK"

If the pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

The functions supported by the mobile phone and audio device are displayed as symbols when paired.

White symbol: the function is active.

Gray symbol: the function is inactive.

Symbol	Function
	Telephone.
	Additional telephone.
	Audio source.

Four mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle at once. Up to three mobile phones can be connected with the vehicle at once.

If pairing was unsuccessful: What to do if..., refer to page 207.

Following the initial pairing

- The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within a short period of time when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- The phone book entries of the telephone stored on the SIM card or mobile phone are transmitted to the vehicle after detection, depending on the mobile phone.
- Four mobile phones can be paired.
- Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g., authorization or a secure connection; refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. If a different detected cell phone is connected with the vehicle, A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

CarManuals2.com

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Select the mobile phone that is to be connected.

The functions assigned to the mobile phone before unpairing are assigned to the mobile phone when it is reconnected. If the mobile phone is already connected, these functions are deactivated.

Configuring cell phone

Additional functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected mobile phones.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Highlight the mobile phone to be configured.
4. Open "Options".

5. "Configure phone"
6. At least one function must be selected.
   - ▷ "Telephone"
   - ▷ "Additional telephone"
   - ▷ "Audio"
7. "OK"

If a function is assigned to a mobile phone, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a mobile phone that is already connected and the mobile phone will be unpaired.

Swapping the telephone and additional telephone

The function of the telephone and additional telephone can be swapped automatically.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. "Swap phone/addit. phone"

Unpairing the mobile phone

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

Information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 204.

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

- ▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth in the vehicle and on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via iDrive.
- ▷ Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle? Delete connections with other devices if necessary.
- ▷ Is the audio connection activated? Deactivate the audio connection.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone in power-save mode or does it have only a limited remaining battery life? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or via the charging cable.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible that only one cell phone can be connected to the vehicle. Unpair the connected cell phone from the vehicle and pair and connect only one cell phone.

The mobile phone no longer reacts.

- ▷ Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- ▷ Ambient temperatures too high or too low? Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

The telephone functions are not available.

- ▷ Is the mobile phone paired as an additional telephone and is the additional telephone function deactivated? Activate the function.
- ▷ Is an outgoing call not possible? Connect the mobile phone as a telephone.

No or not all phone book entries are displayed, or they are incomplete.

- ▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries being stored is too high.
- ▷ Is the data volume of the contact too large, e.g., due to stored information such as notes? Reduce the data volume of the contact.

CarManuals2.com

- Is the mobile phone connected as an audio source? The mobile phone must be connected as a telephone.
- Is the mobile phone connected as an audio source or additional telephone? The mobile phone must be connected as a telephone.

CarManuals2.com

The phone connection quality is poor.

- The strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone can be adjusted, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter or place it in the area of the center console.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone and loudspeakers separately.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline or service center.

Controls

Adjusting the volume

Turn the knob until the desired volume is selected. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

The vehicle automatically adjusts the volume of the microphone on the telephone and the volume of the called party. Depending on the mobile phone, the volumes may need to be adjusted. The settings can only be created during a call and must be adjusted separately for each telephone. The settings are deleted when the telephone is unpaired.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired setting: "Microphone" or "Loudspeak."
5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Incoming call

Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, the name of the contact is displayed. Otherwise, only the phone number is displayed.

If more than one phone number is assigned to a contact, only the name of the contact is displayed.

For calls on the additional telephone, the number is only displayed if it is transmitted by the network.

An incoming call to the additional telephone is automatically rejected if there is an active call on the other telephone.

Accepting a call

Via iDrive

"Accept"



Via the button on the steering wheel



Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster

"Accept"

Rejecting a call

Via iDrive

"Reject"

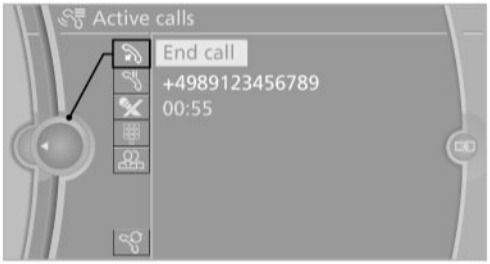
Via the instrument cluster

"Reject"

Ending a call

Via iDrive

"End call"



Via the button on the steering wheel

Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster

"End call"

CarManuals2.com

Entering a phone number

Dialing a number

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select the symbol.



The phone number can also be entered by voice.

Calls with multiple parties

General information

You can switch between calls or connect two calls to a single conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function might have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone must be adjusted accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an ongoing call, a call waiting signal sounds where appropriate.

"Accept"

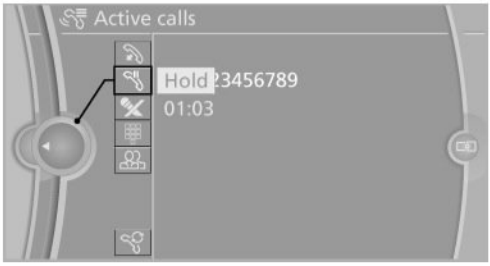
The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

Establish an additional call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Hold"

   The existing call is put on hold.



4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, hold call

The active call is displayed in color.

The call on hold is displayed in gray.

"Swap calls"

The call on hold is resumed.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

Switching the microphone to mute

When a call is active, the microphone can be muted.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Microphone mute"

A microphone that has been switched to mute is automatically reactivated:

- When a new connection is established.
- When switching between call parties.

DTMF suffix dialing

DTMF suffix dialing can be used for gaining access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g., to make a remote inquiry of an answering machine. The DTMF code is needed for this purpose.

1. "Telephone"
2. Select the contact from a list or "Dial number".
3. "Keypad dialing"
4. Enter the DTMF code via iDrive.

Phone book

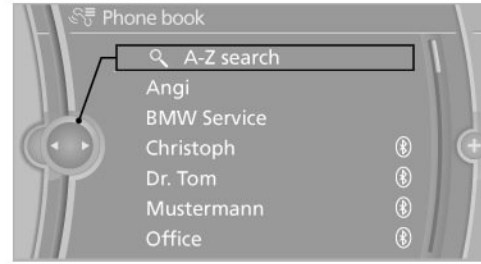
Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

CarManuals2.com

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts.



Calling a contact

Symbol	Meaning
	Contact with one stored phone number.
	Contact with more than one stored phone number.
	Call not possible; mobile phone without reception or network, or Service Request is active.

For contacts with one stored phone number: select the required contact. The connection is established.

For contacts with more than one stored phone number: select the required contact and the phone number. The connection is established.

Editing a contact

Changing the entries in "Contacts". When a contact is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

Redialing

General information

The list of dialed numbers in the mobile phone is transmitted to the vehicle depending on the mobile phone. The 20 phone numbers dialed last are displayed. The sorting order of the phone numbers depends on the particular mobile phone.

Dialing the number via the instrument cluster

This is possible when there is no active call.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Dialing a number via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"
3. Select the desired entry and the phone number if necessary.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

The erasure of entries depends on the mobile phone.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or"Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

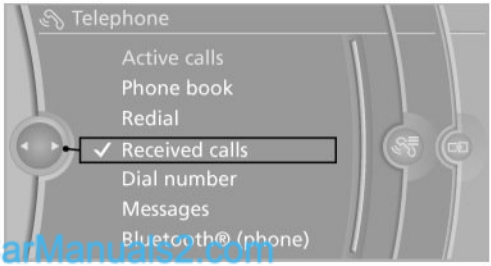
1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the contact, if necessary.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. "Store contact"

Received calls

Displaying calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"



CarManuals2.com

Calling a number from the list

Selecting an entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

The erasure of entries depends on the mobile phone.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or"Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the contact, if necessary.

5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. "Store contact"

Hands-free system

General information

Calls that are being made on the hands-free system can be continued on the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that were begun outside of the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued on the hands-free system with the ignition switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the system automatically switches to the hands-free system.

If the system does not switch over automatically, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

From the hands-free system to the mobile phone

Calls that are made on the hands-free system can in some cases be continued on the mobile phone; this depends on the mobile phone.

Follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Snap-in adapter

General information

Detailed information about snap-in adapters, which support the functions of the mobile phone, is available from the service center.

Notes

At high temperatures, the charge functions of the mobile phone can be limited under certain circumstances, and the functions are no longer executed.

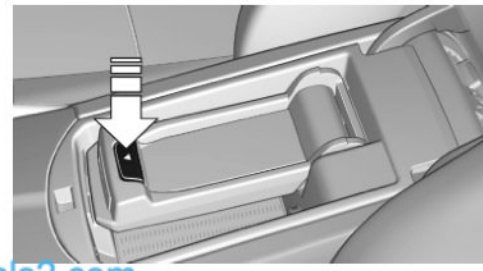
When the mobile phone is used via the vehicle, heed the operating manual of the mobile phone.

Installation position

In the center armrest.

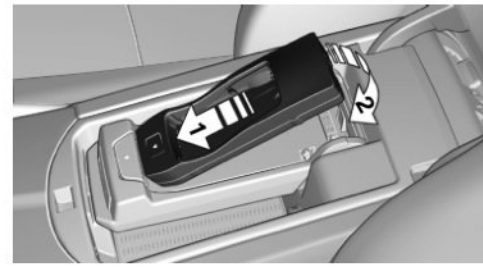
Inserting the snap-in adapter

1. Press the button and remove the cover.



CarManuals2.com

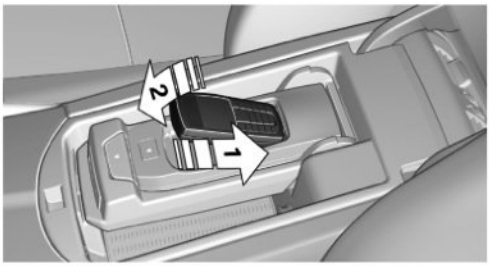
2. Insert the snap-in adapter in the direction of the arrow, arrow 1, and press down, arrow 2, until it engages.



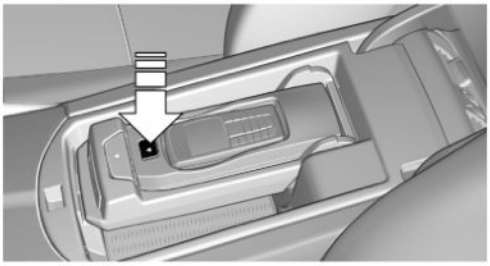
Inserting the mobile phone

1. Depending on the mobile phone, remove the protective cap from the antenna connector and from the USB connection of the mobile phone.
2. Slide the mobile phone with the buttons facing up in the direction of the electrical con-

nections, arrow 1, and push downward, arrow 2 until it engages.



Removing the mobile phone



Press the button and remove the mobile phone.

CarManuals2.com

Office

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance

General information

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, text messages, and e-mails from the mobile phone can be displayed on the Control Display if the mobile phone provides compatible support of these functions and the necessary Bluetooth standards.

Information about which mobile phones support Office functions can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth. A limited number of compatible mobile phones is available for Office.

Contents are only displayed in full length when the vehicle is stationary.

The mobile phone has read-access only.

Do not use Office while driving

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle's occupants and to other road users, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow this.◄

Requirements

▷ A suitable mobile phone is paired with the vehicle and connected. In some mobile phones, data access must be confirmed on the mobile phone.

▷ The time, time zone, and date, refer to page 82, are correctly set on the Control Display and on the mobile phone to correctly display appointments, for example.

▷ Office is activated, refer to page 205.

CarManuals2.com

Updating

Data are updated every time the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle. Appointment entries, tasks, notes and reminders can be updated separately.

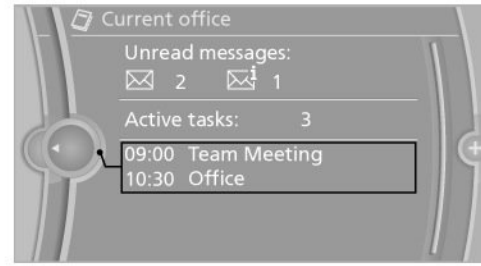
1. "Office"
2. "Current office", "Calendar", "Tasks", "Notes" or "Reminders"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Update data"

   Cell phone data are transmitted again to the vehicle.

Office information

The number of unread messages and active tasks as well as the upcoming appointments are displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Current office"
3. Select the desired entry to display details.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Contacts

Note

If equipped with full mobile phone preparation package.

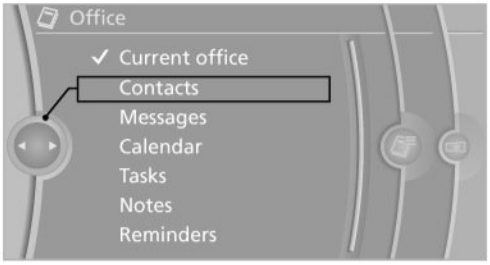
At a glance

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. Addresses can be adopted as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

Displaying contacts

General information

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"



All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z search is offered, refer to page 21.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone.

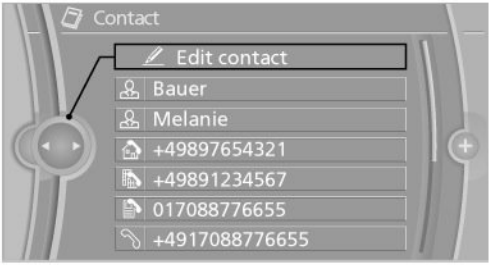
Dialing phone numbers

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select the phone number.

   The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"



3. Change the entries.
4. "Store contact in vehicle"

When a contact is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Selecting the contact as a navigation destination

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select the address.

   When contacts from the mobile phone are used, the address may need to be matched to the navigation data contained in the vehicle. In this case:

   Correct the address.
3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking the address as a destination

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data con-

tained in the vehicle. The address can be checked for this purpose.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address if necessary.

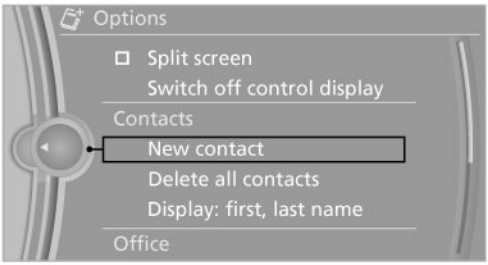
If the address is corrected and stored, a copy of it is stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

New contact

General information

A contact can have up to 8 phone numbers, 2 addresses, 3 e-mail addresses and one Internet address.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "New contact"



5. The entry fields are still filled with the previous entries: "Delete input fields"
6. Fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.
7. Enter the text and assign the contact type.
8. In the navigation system: enter address. Only addresses contained in the navigation data in the vehicle can be entered. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.

   If necessary, "Accept address".
9. "Store contact in vehicle"

Contact types

Various contact types can be assigned to phone numbers and addresses.

Symbol	Meaning
	Home phone number.
	Business phone number.
	Mobile phone number.
	Other phone number.
	Home address.
	Business address.

Specifying the home address

A home address can be stored. It appears at the top of the contact list.

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

CarManuals2.com

Selecting the sorting order of the names

Names can be displayed in a different order.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Depending on how the contacts were stored on the mobile phone, the sorting order of the names may differ from the selected sorting order.

Show contact pictures

Pictures stored with the contacts are stored in the vehicle when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle. The number of transmitted pic-

tures depends on the mobile phone. The mobile phone must support this function.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. "Options"
4. "Configure Bluetooth®"
5. "Show images"

Display of all contact pictures is activated or deactivated.

Exporting/importing contacts

Contacts can be exported and imported via the Personal Profile, refer to page 31. The contacts stored in the vehicle are exported, but not those from the mobile phone.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone cannot be deleted.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Highlight the contact.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete contact"or "Delete all contacts".
6. If necessary "Yes"

CarManuals2.com

Messages

General information

Whether or not text messages and e-mails from the mobile phone are displayed depends on whether transmission from the mobile phone to the vehicle is supported. Text messages and e-mails may not be supported by the service provider, or the function may need to be enabled separately. After the mobile phone is first paired, transmission may take several minutes. Messages are only displayed in full length when the vehicle is stationary. Messages from the additional telephone are not transmitted.

Displaying messages

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"

A symbol identifies the type of message.

Symbol	Message type
	Text messages.
	My Info
	Message from the Concierge service.
	E-mail from mobile phone.

Filtering the message list

The message list can be filtered when more than one type of message exists.

1. "Filter:"



2. Select the type of message.
   - ▷ "All"
     All messages are displayed.
   - ▷ "E-mail"
     Only e-mails from the mobile phone are displayed.
   - ▷ "Service message"
     Only messages from the BMW Assist Concierge service and My Info are displayed.
   - ▷ "Text message"
     Only text messages from the mobile phone are displayed.

Deleting messages

Messages from the Concierge service and My Info can be deleted.

Delete a message:

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete message"

Delete all messages:

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all messages" or"Delete service messages"

Text messages

Calling the sender of a text message

1. Select the desired message.
2. Select the symbol.

Saving the sender in the contacts

1. Highlight the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 221.

Reading the text message out loud

Read the text message out loud, refer to page 221.

My Info

Selecting additional functions

Additional functions are available when a message is selected:

Symbol	Function
	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
	"Call" If the message contains a number, the connection is established.
	"Select phone number" If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. The connection is established.

Message from the Concierge service

Storing an address

1. Select the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Selecting additional functions

Additional functions are available when a message is selected:

Symbol	Function
	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
	"Call" If the message contains a number, the connection is established.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Symbol	Function
	"Select phone number" If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. The connection is established.
	"Further information" Displaying additional information.

E-mail

Displaying e-mails

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired e-mail.

Displaying e-mail contacts

If the sender and recipient of an e-mail are transmitted by the mobile phone, this information is displayed in the e-mail.

"Sender/Recipient"

If the e-mail addresses are stored in the contacts, the contact is displayed. Select the contact to display details.

If the e-mail addresses are not stored in the contacts, only the e-mail address is displayed.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 221.

Deactivating the full display

When an e-mail is opened in the vehicle, the e-mail is fully transmitted to the vehicle. This may result in charges.

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Fully download e-mails"

Only a part of the e-mail from the cell phone is loaded into the vehicle.

Reading the e-mail out loud

Read the e-mail out loud, refer to page 221.

Calendar

Display the calendar

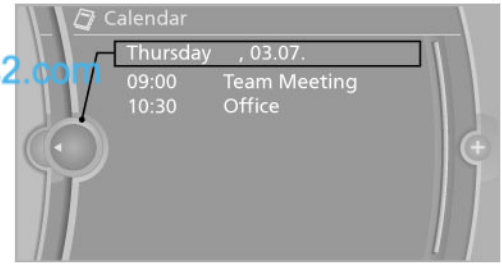
Appointments during the last 20 and the next 50 days can be displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Calendar"

   The appointments on the current day are displayed.

Selecting the calendar day

1. Select the date.



CarManuals2.com

2. Select the desired day or date.
   - ▷ "Next day"
   - ▷ "Date:"
   - ▷ "Previous day"
   - ▷ "Today"

Display the appointment

1. Select the desired appointment.
2. Scroll through the appointment if necessary:
   - ▷ Turn the controller.
   - ▷ Select the symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 221.

Reading the appointment out loud

Read the appointment out loud, refer to page 221.

Tasks

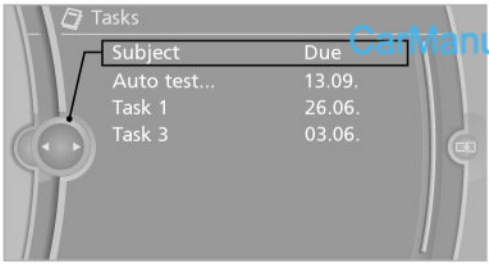
Displaying the task list

Display tasks that are due within the next 90 days.

1. "Office"
2. "Tasks"

Sorting the task list

1. Select the header in the task list.



2. Select the sorting criterion:
   - ▷ "Priority (!)"
   - ▷ "Subject"
   - ▷ "Due date"

Displaying the task

1. Select the desired task.
2. Scroll in the task if necessary:
   - ▷ Turn the controller.
   - ▷ Select the symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 221.

Reading the task out loud

Read the task out loud, refer to page 221.

Notes

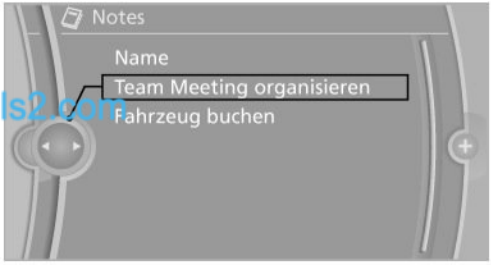
Displaying notes

1. "Office"
2. "Notes"

   All notes are displayed.

Displaying the note

1. Select the desired note.



2. Scroll in the note if necessary:
   - ▷ Turn the controller.
   - ▷ Select the symbol

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 221.

Reading the note out loud

Read the note out loud, refer to page 221.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Reminders

Displaying reminders

Reminders of pending appointments and tasks are displayed. After an appointment or after a task is due, the reminder is no longer displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Reminders"
3. Select the desired reminder.

The corresponding appointment or the task are displayed.

Using contact data

At a glance

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, emails and notes can be stored or selected.

Displaying contact or selecting phone number

1. "Use contact data"
2. Display the contact or select the phone number:
   - ▷ Select the contact to display contact details.
   - ▷ Select the phone number to establish a connection directly.

Storing contact data

1. "Use contact data"
2. Highlight the phone number or e-mail address.
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Add to existing contact" or "Store as new contact"

Reading out loud

Text messages, e-mails, appointment entries, tasks, and notes can be read out loud.

1. Select the desired message, appointment, task, or note.
2. ▷ Select the symbol.

The following options are available during reading:

- ▷ ❙❙ "Pause"
  Interrupt reading. Select again to restart reading.
- ▷ |◁ "Back to beginning"
  Start reading message again from the beginning.
- ▷ ▷| Select the symbol.
  Skip a paragraph.
- ▷ |◁ Select the symbol.
  Go back one paragraph.
- ▷ To end reading, tilt the controller to the left.

What to do if...

Information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 204.

Appointments, tasks, notes, text messages, or e-mails from the mobile phone are not displayed.

- ▷ The mobile phone is not capable of the missing function or is not connected correctly.
- ▷ The Office function is deactivated.
- ▷ The mobile phone is connected as an additional phone.
- ▷ Appointments are older than 20 days or are more than 50 days in the future.
- ▷ The tasks have been marked as completed or have a due date that lies more than 90 days in the future.

CarManuals2.com

- Depending on the number of stored appointments, task notes, and messages in the mobile phone, not all are displayed in the vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Not all appointments and tasks from the mobile phone are displayed at the right time?

- The time zone, time or date is incorrectly set on the Control Display and mobile phone.

The e-mail attachment is not displayed.

- E-mails are transmitted without an attachment.

Entries are not displayed in full length.

- Text were already transmitted from the mobile phone in a shortened form.
- Synchronization between the mobile phone and vehicle may take several minutes.

The contact pictures are not being displayed?

- Up to 200 contact pictures can be stored in the vehicle.

The E-mail is displayed with a delay?

- Check the e-mail settings on the mobile phone and adjust if necessary.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline or service center.

Contacts

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

CarManuals2.com

ConnectedDrive

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

BMW Assist

General information

BMW Assist provides you with certain services, e.g., transmission of the position data of your vehicle to the BMW Assist Response Center if an Emergency Request has been initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed upon contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without your having to visit a service center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist services will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Requirements

- The installed BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your service center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Enabling must have been completed.
- BMW Assist is activated.

Services offered

- Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- Automatic Collision Notification: under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle and position data are transmitted in the process.
- Customer Relations: connection with Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.
- TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your service center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- Remote Door Unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.
- Stolen Vehicle Recovery: after you report that your vehicle was stolen to the police, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.
- In addition to these services, the optional Convenience Plan offers Concierge service and information for route planning, traffic, and weather. A limited number of calls can be made via the BMW Assist Response Center with Critical Calling if, for example, the mobile phone is not available or discharged.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.

TeleService

CarManuals2.com

General information

TeleService supports communication with your service center.

- Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the service center. In this way, the service center can plan its work in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.
- In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance.
- The service varies by country.
- Connection costs may ensue.
- Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

- BMW Assist is activated.
- Wireless reception is available.
- The ignition is switched on.

Use of TeleService

The TeleServices are typically activated in the vehicle.

Even if TeleService Customer Service is not active, a voice contact to Roadside Assistance is still possible.

To continue using or to deactivate the services, please contact your service partner or the BMW customer hotline.

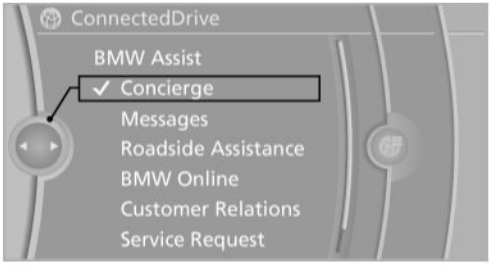
Concierge service

General information

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Assist Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Convenience Plan.

Starting the Concierge service

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Concierge"



3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established with the BMW Assist Concierge service. Phone numbers and addresses can be transmitted to the vehicle.

Roadside Assistance

At a glance

BMW Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

Roadside Assistance can also be contacted via a Check Control message, refer to page 74.

Start Roadside Assistance without BMW Assist or TeleServices

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Roadside Assistance"

   The Roadside Assistance number is displayed. If the mobile phone is paired, a con-

nection is established to Roadside Assistance.

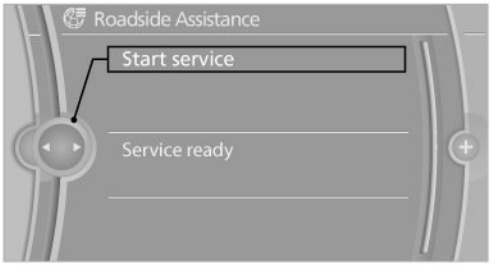


Start Roadside Assistance with BMW Assist or TeleServices

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with TeleServices, support is first offered through TeleService Diagnosis and, where applicable, then through TeleService Help.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Roadside Assistance"
3. "Start service"



TeleService Diagnosis

TeleService Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are important for vehicle diagnosis. These data are transmitted automatically.

After the data are transmitted, the voice connection to Roadside Assistance is reestablished.

BMW Search

At a glance

A business search can be opened via BMW Search.

CarManuals2.com

License conditions

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD., in Japan and other countries.

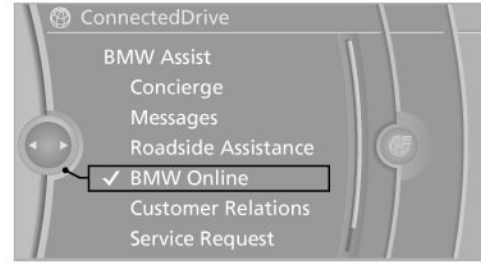
This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Requirements

- Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.
- The date setting, refer to page 83, on the Control Display is current.
- The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.

Starting BMW Search

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Online"



3. If necessary, "OK".

The BMW Search home page is displayed.

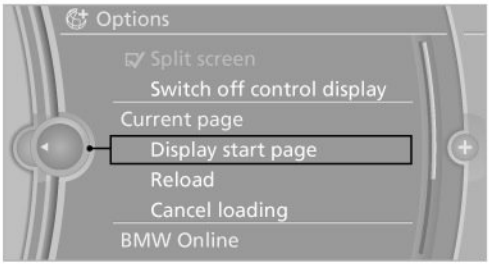
Operating BMW Search

To start a search:

- Turn the controller to highlight an element.
- Press the controller to display an element.

Opening the start page

1. "Options" Open.
2. "Display start page"



Loading a new page

1. "Options" Open.
2. "Update"

Cancel

1. "Options" Open.
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relations

At a glance

Contact Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling Customer Relations

Vehicles not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If the mobile phone is paired, a connection is established to Customer Relations.

CarManuals2.com

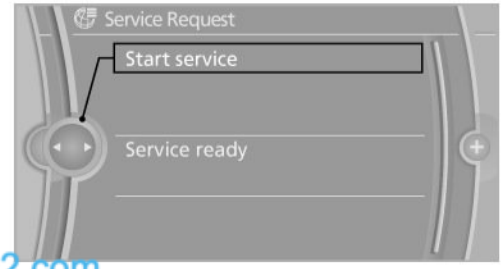
Service Request

At a glance

Sends information to your service partner to request the arrangement of a service appointment. The TeleService data is transmitted during a Service Request. If possible, your service partner will establish contact with you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Service Request"
3. "Start service"



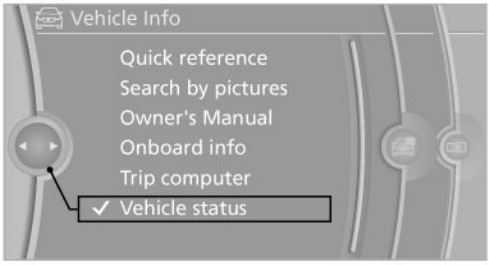
A Service Request can be started via a Check Control message, refer to page 74.

Automatic Service Request

The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your service partner prior to the service deadline. If possible, the service partner will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

To check when your service partner was notified:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"



TeleService Report

Transmits technical data that is evaluated for the ongoing development of BMW products from your vehicle to BMW in regular intervals if necessary.

TeleService Report is activated in vehicles that meet certain technical requirements and have a valid Assist contract; this feature is free of charge.

Neither personal data nor position data is transmitted.

Indicate when the last TeleService Report was transmitted:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Teleservice Info"

TeleService Battery Guard

TeleService Battery Guard continually checks the battery charge level of the vehicle. If the battery charge level falls below a certain value, a notification is automatically sent to your service partner. If necessary, he will contact you to arrange a service appointment.

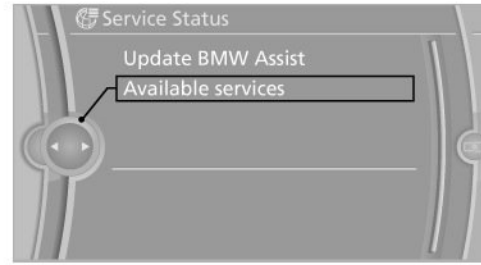
TeleService Battery Guard is only available on vehicles with certain technical requirements and with a valid BMW ConnectedDrive contract.

Services status

Displaying available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Service Status"
3. "Available services"



Updating BMW Assist

Manual update of all services available in the vehicle.

"Update BMW Assist"

CarManuals2.com

Data transfer

During the updating of BMW services, display the status of the data transfer.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Data transfer"

Apps

At a glance

Certain software applications of a suitable cell phone can be integrated in the vehicle. These software applications are displayed on the Control Display.

Operation can be performed via iDrive.

Requirements

- The mobile phone is suitable.
- The cell phone operating system supports the software applications of Apps.
- Software applications are installed on the cell phone and ready to use.
- Corresponding mobile wireless contract.

  Any additionally incurred costs are not a part of Apps.
- Use only BMW approved software applications; otherwise, it may result in malfunctions.

Information about suitable cell phones, available software applications and their installation can be found at www.bmw.com/connectivity or at the service center.

Create the entries.

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Otherwise, the vehicle occupants and other road users may be put in danger because of the distraction from driving.

For reasons of safety, some software applications are usable only while the vehicle is stationary.◄

Use apps

1. Connect the cell phone via the snap-in adapter or via the USB audio interface.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. Select the desired software application.

Displaying status

Information about the currently available software applications can be displayed.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW apps"

PlugIn

Selected functions of the cell phone are displayed on the Control Display. Operation can be performed via iDrive.

1. Connect cell phone via the snap-in adapter.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. "PlugIn"
4. "Activate PlugIn"
5. Navigate to the displayed functions via the controller and select, for example, a desired category or track.

CarManuals2.com

BACK Press button to switch within the cell phone functions to a higher level or back.

MENU Press button twice to switch back to the main menu.

Notes

- The ranges of Apps that can be displayed on the Control Display depend on the range of installed software applications on the cell phone.
- The data transmission of the software applications from the cell phone to the vehicle can last some time. Some software applications depend on the speed of the available Internet connection of the cell phone.

- Some cell phones cannot simultaneously use Apps and the Bluetooth hands-free system.

  If necessary, restart the software application on the cell phone after a phone conversation.

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

CarManuals2.com

Mobility

To ensure that you remain mobile at all times, this chapter supplies you with important information on the topics of fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance, and Roadside Assistance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Refueling

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Refuel promptly

Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/50 km, or operation of the engine is not ensured and damage may occur.◂

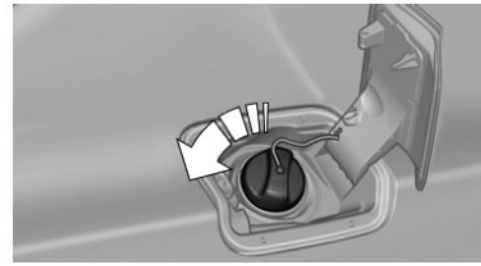
Fuel cap

Opening

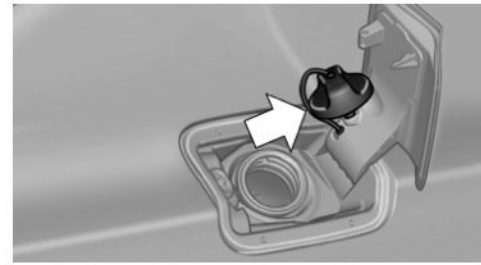
1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

Do not pinch the retaining strap

Do not pinch the retaining strap attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape.

A message is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.◂

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

In the event of an electrical malfunction, for example,

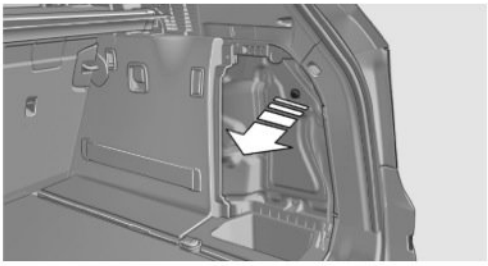
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

1. Open the cover on the right side trim.



2. Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol. This releases the fuel filler flap.



CarManuals2.com

Observe the following when refueling

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Do not overfill the fuel tank

Do not overfill the fuel tank; otherwise fuel may escape, causing harm to the environment and damaging the vehicle.◄

Handling fuels

Obey safety regulations posted at the gas station.◄

Fuel

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Fuel quality

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Refuel only with unleaded gasoline without metallic additives.

Do not refuel with any leaded gasoline or gasoline with metallic additives, e. g. manganese or iron, or permanent damage to the catalytic converter and other components.◂

Do not refuel with ethanol

Do not refuel with E85, i.e., fuel with an ethanol content of 85 %, or with Flex Fuel, as this would damage the engine and fuel supply system.◂

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91 or AKI 89

BMW recommends AKI 91 or 89.

Gasoline with lower AKI

The minimum AKI Rating is 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures.

This has no effect on the engine life.

Minimum fuel grade

Do not use any gasoline below the minimum fuel grade as this may impair engine performance.◂

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada.

Fuels containing up to and including 10 % ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8 % oxygen by weight, that is, 15 % MTBE or 3 % methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

Minimum fuel grade

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in driveability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.

Should you encounter driveability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in unscheduled maintenance.◂

BMW recommends BP fuels

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Wheels and tires

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Tire inflation pressure

Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.

Checking the pressure

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When the tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before a long trip. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that may not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident.◄

After correcting the tire inflation pressure:

- Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
- Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 238, contains all pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. Pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes and recommended tire brands. This information can be obtained from your service center.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 238, and adjust as necessary.



These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

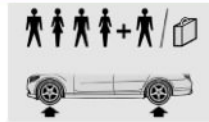
Maximum permissible speed

Do not exceed 100 mph/160 km/h; otherwise, tire damage and accidents may result.◄

CarManuals2.com

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

X3 28i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/55 R 17 102 H M+S A/S RSC 245/55 R 17 102 H M+S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
225/60 R 17 99 H M+S A/S RSC 245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC 225/60 R 17 99 H M+S RSC 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 W RSC Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 W RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.2 / 32
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	2.2 / 32	- 2.4 / 35
Compact wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

CarManuals2.com

X3 35i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 W RSC Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 W RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.2 / 32

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	-	2.4 / 35
Compact wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◄

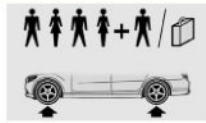
Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

X3 28i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/55 R 17 102 H M +S A/S RSC 245/55 R 17 102 H M +S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
225/60 R 17 99 H M +S A/S RSC 245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S RSC 225/60 R 17 99 H M +S RSC 245/50 R 18 100 H M +S RSC	2.4 / 35	2.8 / 41
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S RSC 245/45 R 19 102 V M +S RSC	2.6 / 38	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 W RSC Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 W RSC	2.3 / 33 -	- 2.6 / 38
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	2.3 / 33 -	- 2.6 / 38
Compact wheel T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

CarManuals2.com

X3 35i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC	2.6 / 38	3.0 / 44
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S RSC	2.8 / 41	3.2 / 46
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 W RSC Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 W RSC	2.4 / 35 -	- 2.8 / 41
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	2.4 / 35 -	- 2.8 / 41
Compact wheel T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire identification marks

Tire size

255/50 R 19 103 Y

255: nominal width in mm

50: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

19: rim diameter in inches

103: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 3510

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

3510: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

DOT ... 3510: the tire was manufactured in the 35th week in 2010.

Recommendation

Regardless of wear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

CarManuals2.com

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

CarManuals2.com

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Temperature grade for this tire

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.◂

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 244, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

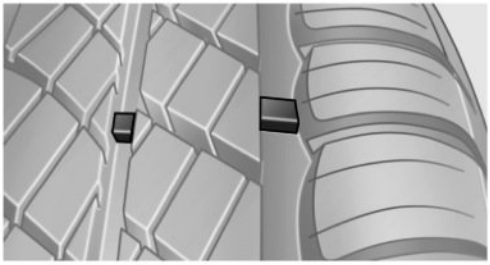
There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

CarManuals2.com

Notes

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle defects:

- Unusual vibrations during driving.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e. g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

In case of tire damage

If there are indications of tire damage, reduce your speed immediately and have the wheels and tires checked right away; otherwise, there is the increased risk of an accident.

Drive carefully to the next service center or tire shop.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.

Otherwise, tire damage can be life-threatening for vehicle occupants and other traffic participants.◄

Repair of tire damage

For safety reasons, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you do not have damaged tires repaired; they should be replaced. Otherwise, damage can occur as a result.◄

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting

Information on mounting tires

Have mounting and balancing performed only by a service center or tire specialist.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◄

Wheel and tire combination

Information on the correct wheel-tire combination and rim versions for your vehicle can be obtained from your service center.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Approved wheels and tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been approved for your particular vehicle model.

For example, despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to body contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents.

The manufacturer of your vehicle cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot ensure the operating safety of the vehicle if they are mounted.◄

CarManuals2.com

Recommended tire brands



For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

With proper use, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling.

New tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Retreaded tires

Possibly substantial variations in the design and age of the tire casing structures can limit service life and have a negative impact on road safety.◄

Winter tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends winter tires for winter roads or at temperatures below +45 °F/+7 °C.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires do provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then display a corresponding sign in the field of vision. You can obtain this sign from the tire specialist or from your service center.

Maximum speed for winter tires

Do not exceed the maximum speed for the winter tires; otherwise, tire damage and accidents can occur.◄

Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

Rotating wheels between axles

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles.

This can impair the handling characteristics.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Run-flat tires

Label



RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels are composed of special rims and tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a pressure loss.

Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page 98.

Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page 95.

Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

Snow chains

Fine-link snow chains

Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your vehicle, classified as road-safe and recommended.

Consult your service center for more information.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- 205/65 R 17.
- 225/60 R 17.
- 245/50 R 18.
- 245/45 R 19.

No snow chains on size 245/55 R 17 tires

Do not mount snow chains on size 245/55 R 17 tires; otherwise, the vehicle may become damaged.◂

Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

CarManuals2.com

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if necessary.

Maximum speed with snow chains

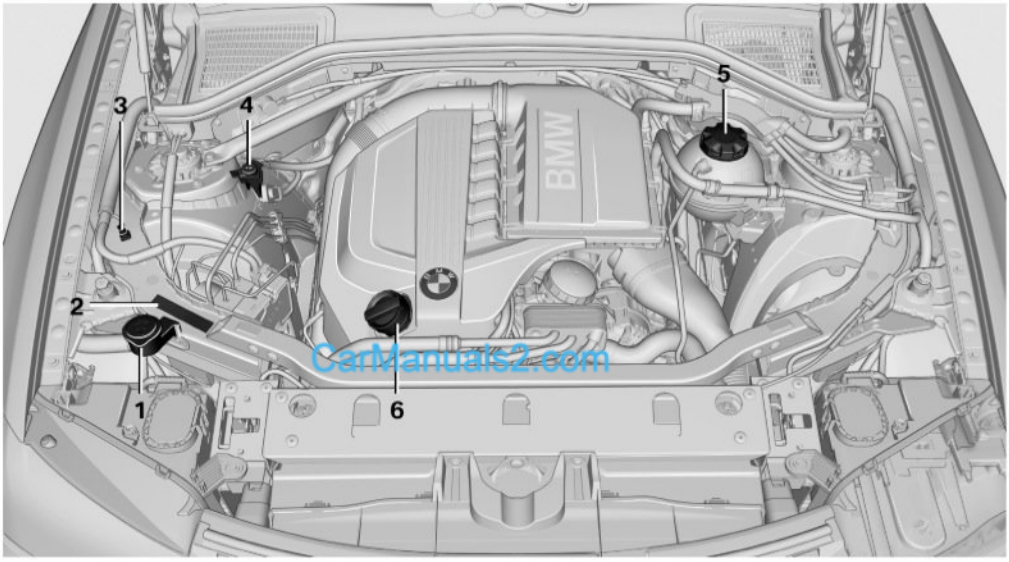
Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Important features in the engine compartment



CarManuals2.com

1 Washer fluid reservoir
2 Vehicle identification number
3 Jump-starting, negative terminal
4 Jump-starting, positive terminal
5 Coolant reservoir
6 Oil filler neck

Hood

Opening the hood

Working in the engine compartment

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the necessary professional technical training.

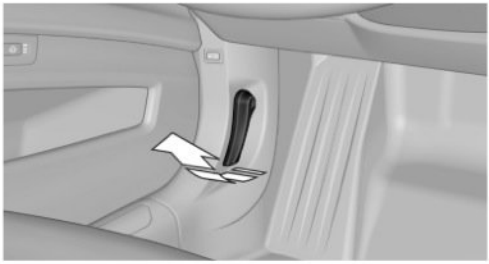
If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a service center.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◄

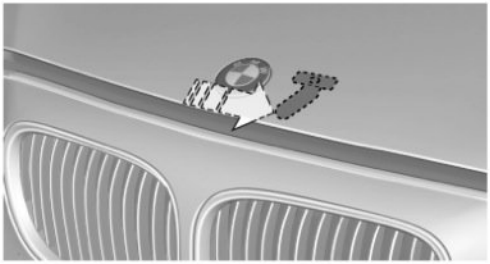
Never reach into the engine compartment

Never reach into the intermediate spaces or gaps in the engine compartment. Otherwise, there is risk of injury, e.g. from rotating or hot parts.◄

1. Pull the lever.



2. Press the release handle and open the hood.



3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.



Danger of injury when the hood is open

There is a danger of injury from protruding parts when the hood is open.◄

Closing the hood


CarManuals2.com

Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 in/40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully.

Make sure you hear the engine compartment lid engage.

Hood open when driving

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving, pull over immediately and close it securely.◄

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Engine oil

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

For X3 xDrive28i: Oil level check

The concept

The oil level is monitored electronically during driving and shown on the Control Display.

If the oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

Displaying the oil level

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Possible messages

- "Engine oil level OK"
- "Engine oil at minimum. Add 1 quart of engine oil!"

  When the display appears in the instrument cluster, add 1 US quart/liter of oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.
- "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"

  Immediately add 1 US quart/liter of oil.

CarManuals2.com

Detailed measurement

Requirements:

- Vehicle is on a level road and the engine is running at operating temperature.
- Automatic transmission: Selector lever in transmission position N or P and gas pedal not depressed.

In order to perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"

The oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

During the detailed measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Duration: approx. 1 minute.

All other models: Oil level check

The concept

The oil level is monitored electronically during driving and shown on the Control Display.

If the oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

Requirements

- The engine must be running and warm after the vehicle has been driven for at least 6 miles/10 km.
- The vehicle is stopped or being driven on a level roadway.

Displaying the oil level

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Possible messages

- "Engine oil level OK"
- "Measurement not possible at this time."
- "Measuring engine oil level..."

  Duration with the engine running: approx. 3 minutes.

  Duration while driving: approx. 5 minutes.
- "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"

  Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.
- "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked."

  Have the vehicle checked immediately.

  Too much engine oil

  Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, surplus oil can lead to engine damage.◄
- "Measurement inactive. Have this checked."

  Note the newly calculated remaining mileage until the next oil service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil

Filler neck


CarManuals2.com

When the indicator lights up in the instrument cluster, add 1 US quart/liter of engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.

Protect children

Keep oil, grease, etc., out of reach of children and heed the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◄

Oil types for refilling

Notes

No oil additives

Oil additives may lead to engine damage.◄

Viscosity grades for engine oils

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil belongs to one of the viscosity grades SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, and SAE 5W-30 or malfunctions or engine damage may occur.◄

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Some types of oils in some cases are not available in all countries.

Approved oil types

Specification
BMW High Performance SAE 5W-30
BMW Longlife-01
BMW Longlife-01 FE

CarManuals2.com

Additional information about the approved types of oils can be requested from the service center.

Alternative oil types

If the approved engine oils are not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an oil with the following specification can be added:

Specification
API SM or superior grade specification

Oil change

An oil change should be carried out by your service center only.

BMW recommends Castrol

Coolant

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Danger of burns from hot engine

Do not open the cooling system while the engine is hot; otherwise, escaping coolant may cause burns.◂

Suitable additives

Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may occur. The additives are harmful to your health.◂

Coolant consists of water and additives.

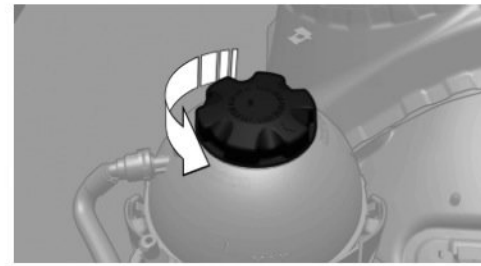
Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your vehicle. Ask your service center for suitable additives.

Coolant level

CarManuals2.com

Checking

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, and then open it.



3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System

The maintenance system directs you to required maintenance measures and thereby supports you in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service determines the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance you need to your user profile.

Detailed information on service requirements, refer to page 77, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. Your service center will read out this data and suggest the right array of service procedures for your vehicle.

Therefore, hand your service specialist the remote control that you used most recently.

CarManuals2.com

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a service center update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service booklet

Perform maintenance work at the service center, and record the work in the service booklet. The entries are proof of regular maintenance.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

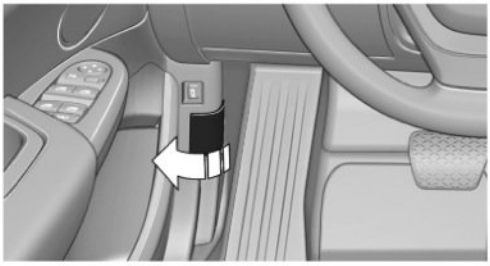
Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

Maintenance and repair should be performed by your service center. Make sure to have regular maintenance procedures recorded in the vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models, and in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries are proof of regular maintenance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle emissions.

Emissions



▷ The warning lamp lights up:

Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Canadian model: warning light indicates the engine symbol.

▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Fuel cap



The indicator lamp lights up.

If the fuel cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system may conclude that fuel vapor is escaping. If the cap is then tightened, the display should go out in a short time.

Data memory

Your vehicle records data relating to vehicle operation, faults and user settings. These data are stored in the remote control and can be read out with suitable devices, particularly when the vehicle is serviced. The data obtained in this way provide valuable information for service processes and repair or for optimizing and developing vehicle functions further.

CarManuals2.com

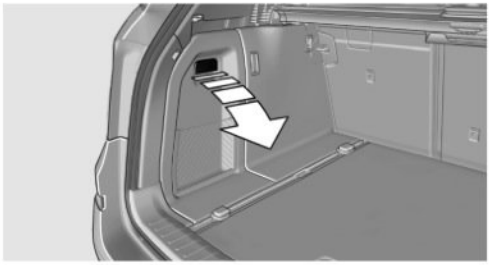
In addition, if you signed a service contract for BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be sent directly from the vehicle to facilitate the desired services.

Replacing components

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the first aid kit behind the left folding cover in the cargo area.

Wiper blade replacement

General information

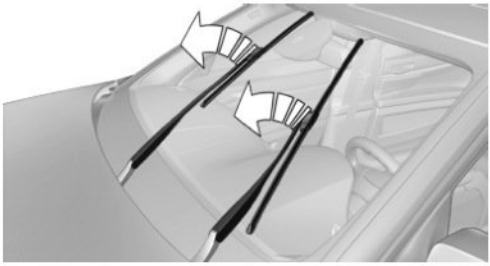
Do not fold down the wipers without wiper blades

Do not fold down the wipers if wiper blades have not been installed; this may damage the windshield.◂

CarManuals2.com

Replacing the front wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up, refer to page 67, the wiper arms.
2. Fold up the wipers.



3. Position the wiper blade in a horizontal position.
4. Remove the wiper blade toward one side.



Replace rear wiper blade

1. Lift off the wiper fully and pull off the wiper blade, arrow.



2. Attach a new wiper blade. It must engage audibly.

Lamp and bulb replacement

General information

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to the service center if you are unfamiliar with them or they are not described here.

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at the service center.

Danger of burns

Only change bulbs when they are cool; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.◄

Working on the lighting system

When working on the lighting system, you should always switch off the lights affected to prevent short circuits.

To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◄

Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is the danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly.◄

Do not touch the bulbs

Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life.

Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◄

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover serve as the light source for controls, display elements and other equipment.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers

CarManuals2.com

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours; otherwise, irritation of the retina could result.◄

Headlamp glass

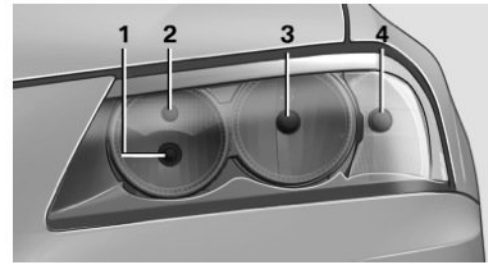
Condensation can form on the inside of the external lamps in cool or humid weather. When driving with the light switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlamp glasses do not need to be changed.

If the headlamps do not dim despite driving with the light switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the light, have the service center check this.

Front lamps, bulb replacement

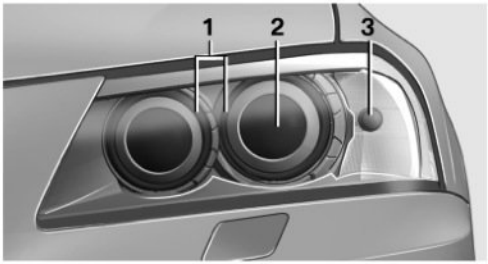
At a glance

Halogen headlamps



1 High beams/headlamp flasher
2 Parking lamps
3 Low beams
4 Turn signal/side marker light

Xenon headlamps



1 Parking lamps / daytime running lights
2 Low beams/high beams/headlamp flasher
3 Turn signal/side marker light

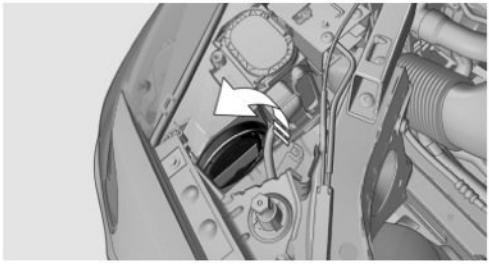
Halogen headlamps

Low beams

Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 254

55-watt bulb, H7

1. Open the hood, refer to page 245.
2. Unscrew the cap counterclockwise and remove it.



3. Carefully pull out the connector.
4. Pull the bulb off the connector and insert the new bulb.
5. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

High beams/headlamp flasher and parking lamps

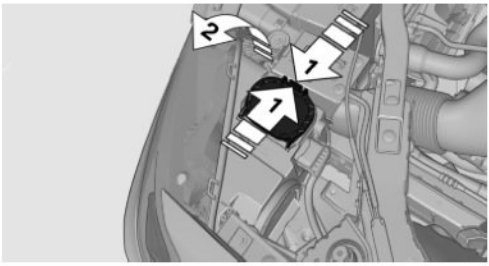
Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 254.

High beams/headlamp flasher: 55-watt bulb, H7

Parking lamps: 5-watt bulb, W5W

1. Open the hood, refer to page 245.
2. Press, arrow 1, and fold out the cover, arrow 2.

CarManuals2.com



3. Remove the bulb holder.

   The lower bulb is the high beam and headlamp flasher, and the upper bulb is the parking lamp.
4. Pull off the bulb.
5. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

Xenon headlamps

Because of the long life of these bulbs, the likelihood of failure is very low. Switching the lamps on and off frequently shortens their life.

If a xenon bulb fails, switch on the front fog lamps and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.

⚠ Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is the danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly.◀

For checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.

Xenon headlamps

Low beams and high beams are designed with xenon technology.

The parking lamps and daylight running lights are made using LED technology.

Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

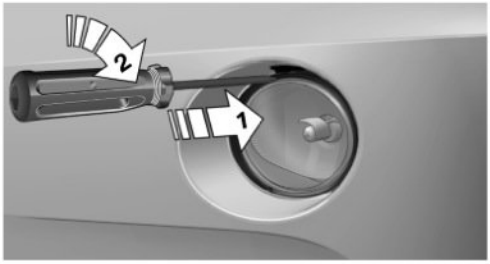
Front fog lamps

Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 254.

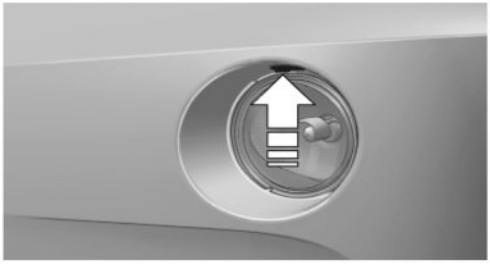
Front fog lamps in vehicles equipped with Adaptive Light Control: 55-watt bulb, H11

Front fog lamps without Adaptive Light Control: 35-watt bulb, H8

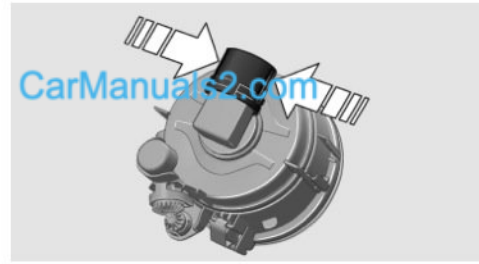
1. Insert the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, with the flat side facing outward, past the removal hook and onto the clip, arrow 1.



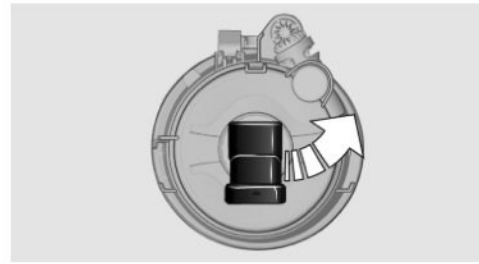
2. Turn the screwdriver by 90°, arrow 2.
3. Press the removal hook upward, arrow, and remove the front fog lamp from the front using the hook.



4. Detach the connector.


CarManuals2.com

5. Turn the bulb bracket and remove it.



6. Remove the bulb and replace it.
7. Proceed in reverse order to insert the front fog lamp. Note the guide rails in doing so.

Turn signal

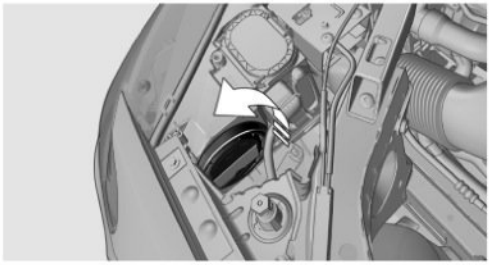
Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 254.

The turn signals are located next to each low beam in the engine compartment.

21-watt bulb, PY 21W

1. Open the hood, refer to page 245.
2. Unscrew the cap counterclockwise and remove it carefully.

The bulb is attached to the cap.



3. Turn the bulb clockwise to remove it.
4. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

Lateral turn signals

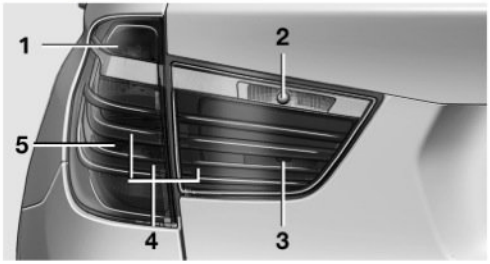
Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 254.

These lamps are made using LED technology.

Please contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Tail lamps, bulb replacement

At a glance



1 Turn signal
2 Backup lamp
3 Inside brake lamp
4 Tail lamp
5 Tail lamp/brake light

Turn signal, tail lamp and brake lamp

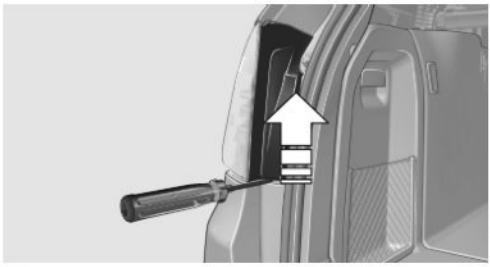
Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 254.

21-watt bulb, P21W

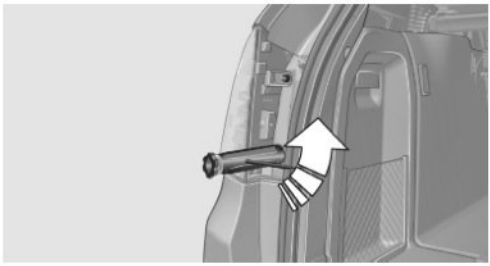
With an Adaptive Light Control or xenon headlamp: tail lamp is designed with LED-technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

CarManuals2.com

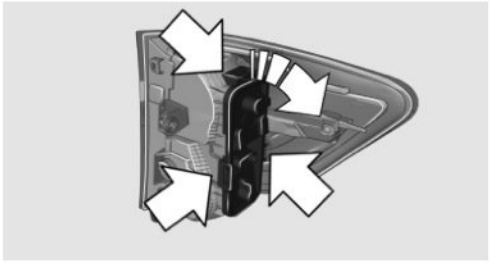
1. Open the tailgate.
2. Insert the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit between the cover and body, push it up, arrow, and remove the cover.



3. Release the nuts.



4. Remove the tail lamp from the body and detach the connector.
5. Release three fasteners on the bulb holder and remove bulb holder from the tail lamp.



6. Turn the bulb and remove it. The turn signal is the upper bulb and the tail lamp/brake lamp is the lower bulb on the bulb holder.
7. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder is engaged in all fasteners.
8. Connect and install tail lamp.
9. Insert cover with the three mountings in the tail lamp. While applying pressure on the top and bottom bracket, slide the cover down to the stop.

Backup lamp and inner brake lamp

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 254.

Backup lamp: 16-watt bulb, W16W

Inner brake lamp: 21-watt bulb, H21W

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull out the cover at the recessed grip, arrow.



3. Detach the connector.
4. Detach the bulb holder from the tail lamp.

   The backup lamp is the upper lamp and the brake lamp is the lower lamp on the bulb holder.
5. To replace the backup lamp, pull off the bulb carefully.

   To replace the brake lamp, push the bulb down and turn it to the left.
6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder.

   Ensure that the bulb holder is firmly attached.

CarManuals2.com

Changing wheels

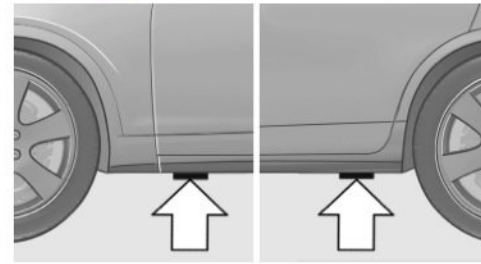
Notes

The vehicle equipment does not include a spare tire.

When using run-flat tires or tire sealants, a tire does not need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your service center.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the positions shown.

Vehicle battery

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery.

Your service center will be glad to advise you on questions regarding the battery.

Battery replacement

Use approved vehicle batteries only

Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

systems or functions may not be fully available.◄

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your service center to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available and that any Check Control messages are no longer displayed.

Charging the battery

Note

Do not plug the charger into the socket

Do not connect battery chargers to the factory-installed sockets in the vehicle. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle.◄

Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 262, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be reinitialized.

Individual settings need to be reprogrammed:

- Seat and mirror memory: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Radio station: save again.
- Navigation system: wait for the operability of the navigation.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by your service center or bring them to a recycling center.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

Notes

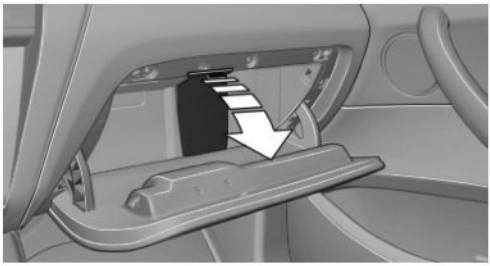
CarManuals2.com

Replacing fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◄

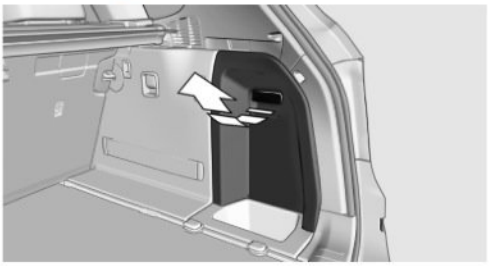
Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the cargo area.

In the glove compartment



Swing the cover down, arrow.

In the cargo area



Open the cover on the right side trim and remove the sound insulation.

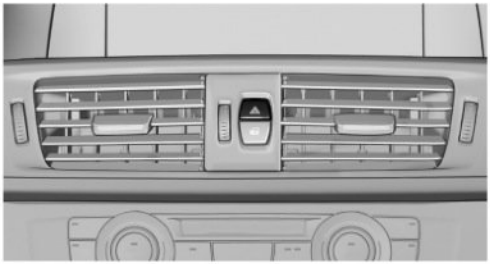
Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Hazard warning flashers



The button is located in the center console.

Emergency Request

Requirements

- Equipment version with full preparation package mobile phone.

  An Emergency Request can be made, even if no mobile phones are paired with the vehicle.
- BMW Assist is activated.
- The radio ready state is switched on.
- The BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network supported by BMW Assist.
- The Assist system is functional.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

Emergency Request not guaranteed

CarManuals2.com

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.◂

Service contract

- After your contract with BMW Assist has expired, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by the service center without you having to visit a workshop.

  After deactivation, an Emergency Request is no longer possible.
- Under certain circumstances, the system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Initiating an Emergency Request



1. Press the cover briefly to open it.
2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.

- The LED lights up: an Emergency Request was initiated.

  If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.
- The LED flashes if the connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established.

  After the Emergency Request arrives at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

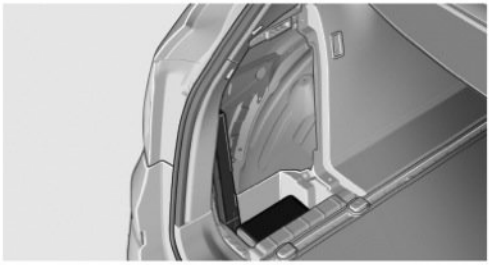
For this purpose, data that are used to determine the necessary rescue measures, such as the current position of the vehicle if it can be established, are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

▷ If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard on the hands-free system, the hands-free system may be malfunctioning. However, the BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you.

Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

To remove, loosen the bracket.

First aid kit


CarManuals2.com

The first aid kit is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Roadside Assistance

Service availability

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

Roadside Assistance

The Roadside Assistance, refer to page 225, phone number can be viewed on the iDrive or a connection to Roadside Assistance can be established directly.

Jump-starting

Notes

If the battery is discharged, an engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

Do not touch live parts

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running.◄

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

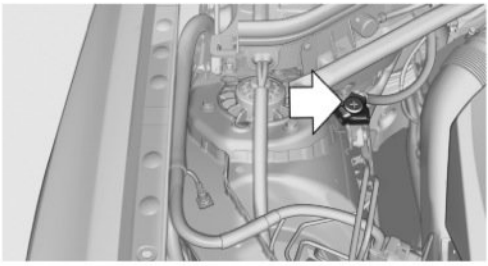
Bodywork contact between vehicles

Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is the danger of short circuits.◄

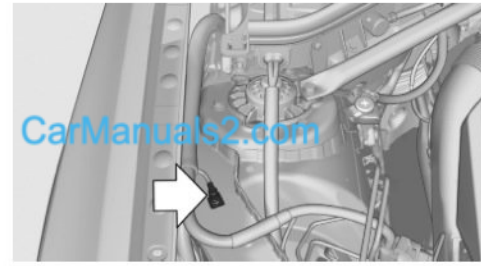
Starting aid terminals

Connecting order

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order; otherwise, there is the danger of injury from sparking.◄



The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.


CarManuals2.com

The body ground or a special nut acts as the negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the cap of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the assisting vehicle.
3. Attach the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the other end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle being started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Tow-starting and towing

Automatic transmission: transporting your vehicle

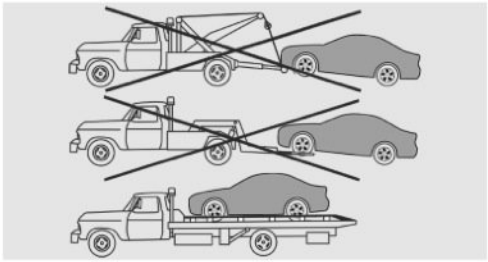
Note

Your vehicle is not permitted to be towed. Therefore, contact a service center in the event of a breakdown.

Do not have the vehicle towed

Have your vehicle transported on a loading platform only; otherwise, damage may occur.◀

Tow truck



Do not lift the vehicle

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◀

Use the tow fitting screwed in at the front for maneuvering the vehicle only.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Light towing vehicle

The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle response.◀

CarManuals2.com

Attaching the tow bar/tow rope correctly

Attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting; connecting it to other vehicle parts may cause damage.◀

- Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
- If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- Maneuvering capability is limited during cornering.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

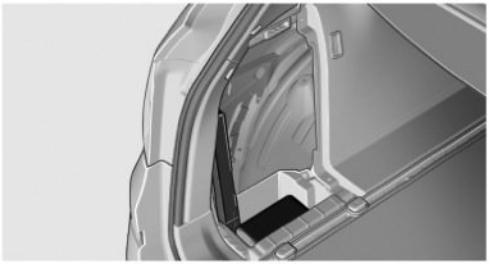
When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

Attaching the tow rope correctly

Only secure the tow rope on the tow fitting; otherwise, damage can occur when it is secured on other parts of the vehicle.◀

Tow fitting



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW. It is stored in the onboard vehicle tool kit behind the left folding cover in the cargo area.

Tow fitting, information on use

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Otherwise, damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◄

Screw thread

Push out the cover by pressing on the top edge.

Front



Rear


CarManuals2.com

Tow-starting

Automatic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Due to the automatic transmission, the engine cannot be started by tow-starting.

Have the cause of the starting difficulties remedied.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Care

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Car washes

Notes

Steam jets or high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, hold them a sufficient distance away and use a maximum temperature of 140 °F/60 °C.

Ensure that a distance of at least 31.5 inches/50 cm is maintained at all times. Holding them too close or using excessively high pressures or temperatures can cause damage or preliminary damage that may then lead to long-term damage.

Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◂

Cleaning sensors/cameras with high-pressure washers

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the exterior sensors and cameras, e.g., Park Distance Control, for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.◂

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter.

Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Automatic car washes

CarManuals2.com

Notes

Note the following:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.
- Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.
- Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 66, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.
- In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 42.

Guide rails in car washes

Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the vehicle body could be damaged.◂

Before driving into a car wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a car wash, take the following steps:

Automatic transmission:

1. Release parking brake, refer to page 62, and deactivate Automatic Hold, refer to page 64.
2. Drive into the car wash.
3. Depress the brake pedal as needed.
4. Engage transmission position N.
5. Switch the engine off. In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and a Check-Control message is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Transmission position P with the ignition off

When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◀

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in transmission position N.

A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Transmission position

Transmission position P is engaged automatically:

- When the ignition is switched off.
- After approx. 15 minutes.

Headlamps

- Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or caustic cleansers.
- Soak areas that have been soiled e.g. due to insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.
- Thaw ice with deicing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Vehicle care

Car care products

BMW recommends using cleaning and care products from BMW, since these have been tested and approved.

Car care and cleaning products

Follow the instructions on the container.

When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows.

Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles.

CarManuals2.com

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health.◀

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention.

Environmental influences can act on the vehicle paint. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from the service center.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If they are very dirty, e.g., beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Damage from Velcro® fasteners

Open Velcro® fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◄

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

Use wheel cleaner, particularly during the winter months. Do not use aggressive, acidic, strongly alkaline or abrasive cleaners, or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C; follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Aside from water, treat only with rubber cleansers.

When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or reduced noise damping.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

These include:

- Imitation leather surfaces.
- Headliner.
- Lamp lenses.
- Instrument cluster cover.
- Matte black spray-coated components.
- Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Lightly dampen the cloth with water.

Do not soak the headliner.

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such; this could lead to surface damage.◄

CarManuals2.com

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Chemical cleaning

Do not clean chemically; this can destroy the webbing.◄

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Floor carpets and floor mats

No objects in the area around the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the area of motion of the pedals; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly fixed in place.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, for example.◄

Floor mats can be removed from the passenger compartment for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors/cameras

To clean sensors and cameras, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

CarManuals2.com

Displays/screens

Clean the displays with an antistatic microfiber cloth.

Cleaning displays

Do not use chemical or household cleansers.

Keep all fluids and moisture away from the unit.

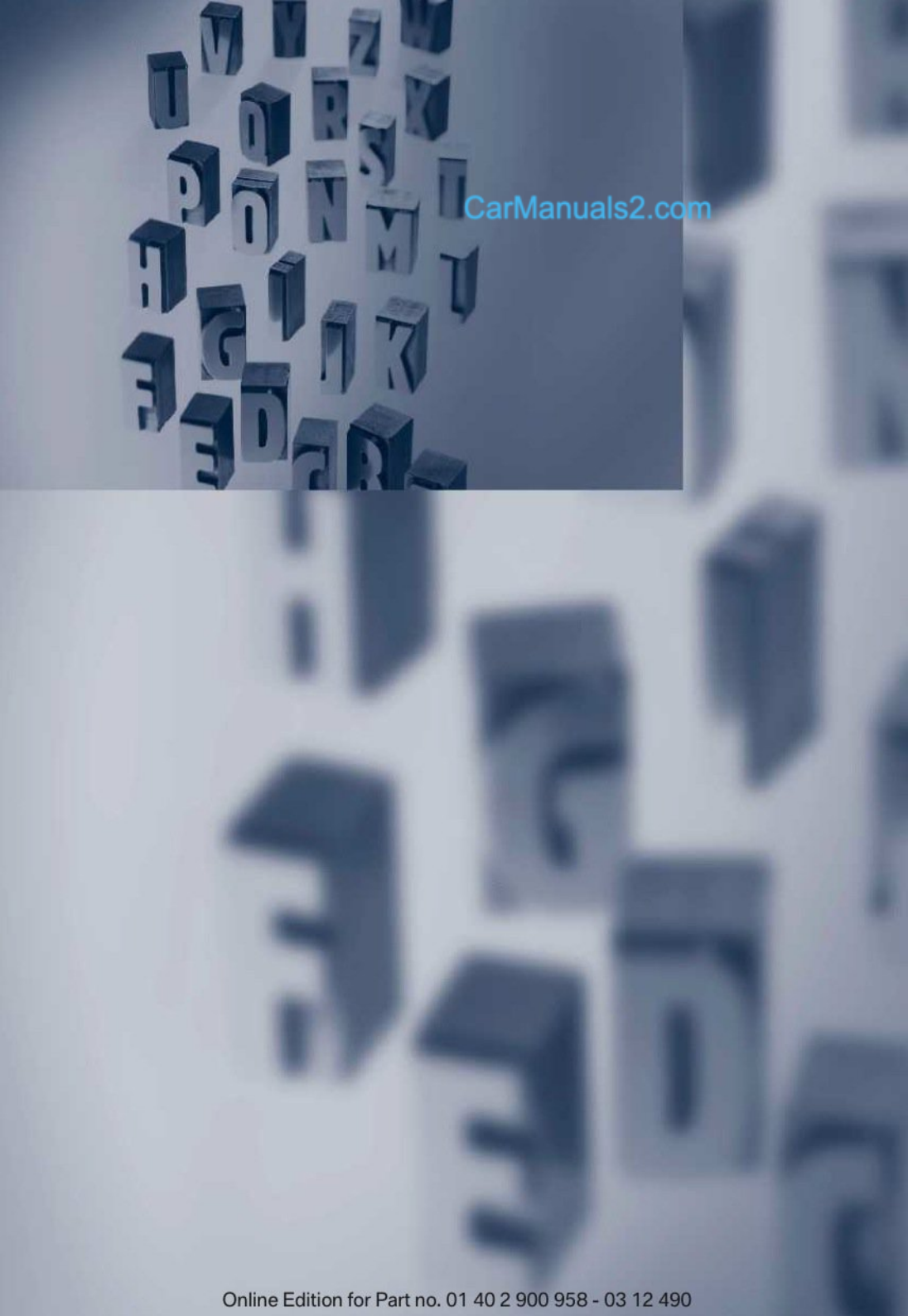
Otherwise, they could affect or damage surfaces or electrical components.

Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning and do not use abrasive materials; otherwise, damage can result.◄

Long-term vehicle storage

Your service center can advise you on what to consider when storing the vehicle for longer than three months.

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

CarManuals2.com

Reference

This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system, and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Technical data

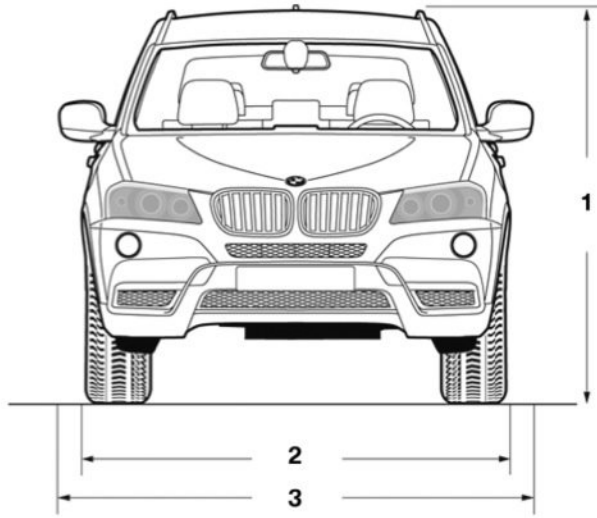
Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

CarManuals2.com

Dimensions

Width, height



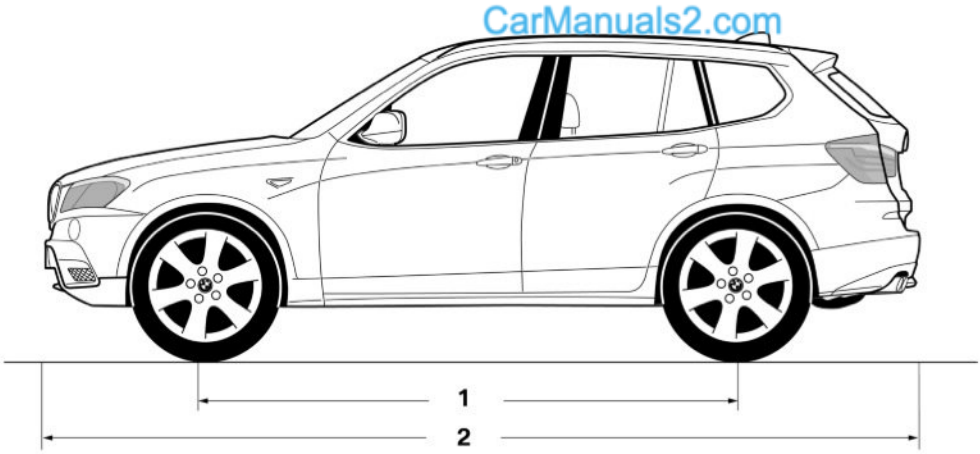
1 Vehicle height: 66 inches/1,675 mm

2 Vehicle width without mirrors: 74 inches/ 1,881 mm

3 Vehicle width with mirrors: 82.6 inches / 2,098 mm

Length, wheel base

CarManuals2.com



1 Wheel base: 110.6 inches/2,810 mm

2 Vehicle length: 182.9 inches/4,648 mm

Smallest turning circle

Dia.: 39 ft/11.9 m

Weights

X3 xDrive28i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,136/2,330
Load	lbs/kg	903/410
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,403/1,090
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,821/1,280
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	19.4–56.5 550–1,600

X3 xDrive35i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,214/2,365
Load	lbs/kg	903/410
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,447/1,110
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,844/1,290
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100
Cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	19.4–56.5 550–1,600

CarManuals2.com

Capacities

	US gal/liters	Notes
Fuel tank	17.7/67	Fuel quality, refer to page 236
Windshield and headlamp washer system	1.3/5	

Short commands of the voice activation system

CarManuals2.com

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 22.

To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹

Adjusting

Vehicle

Function	Command
Open the main menu.	›Main menu‹
Open the options.	›Options‹
Open the settings.	›Settings‹
Info display of the instrument cluster.	›Info Display‹
Settings on the Control Display.	›Control display‹
Open the time and date.	›Time and date‹
Open the language and units.	›Language and units‹
Open the speed limit.	›Speed‹
Open the light.	›Lighting‹
Open the door lock.	›Door locks‹
Open the profiles.	›Profiles‹

Equipment

Function	Command
Open the air conditioning settings.	›Climate‹
Open the Head-up Display.	›head up display‹

CarManuals2.com

Vehicle information

Owner's Manual

Function	Command
Open the Owner's Manual.	›Display Owner's Manual‹
Open the Quick Reference Guide.	›Quick reference‹
Open the index.	›Owner's Manual‹
Open the search by pictures.	›Search by pictures‹

Computer

Function	Command
Call up the onboard computer.	›Onboard info‹
Call up the trip computer.	›Trip computer‹

Vehicle

Function	Command
Open the vehicle information.	›Vehicle info‹
Open the vehicle status.	›Vehicle status‹

Navigation

General information

CarManuals2.com

Function	Command
Opens the Navigation menu.	›Navigation‹
Open the destination entry.	›Enter address‹
Enter the address.	›Enter address‹
Enter a town/city.	›City‹
Enter a state/province.	›State‹
Enter the postal code.	›Postal Code‹
Open destination guidance.	›Guidance‹
Start destination guidance.	›Start guidance‹
Terminate destination guidance.	›Stop guidance‹
Open the home address.	›Home address‹
Open the route criteria.	›Route preference‹
Open the route.	›Route information‹
Turn on spoken instructions.	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeat the spoken instruction.	›Repeat voice instructions‹
Turn off spoken instructions.	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Display the address book.	›Address book‹
Display the most recent destinations.	›Last destinations‹
Open the traffic bulletins.	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations.	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Display the map.	›Map‹
Map facing north.	›Map facing north‹
Map facing the direction of travel.	›Map in direction of travel‹

Function	Command
Perspective map.	›Map perspective view‹
Automatic scaling of the map.	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Scale...feet.	›Map scale ... feet‹
Scale...meters.	›Map scale ... meters‹ e.g., map scale 100 meters
Scale...kilometers.	›Map scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., map scale 5 kilometers
Scale...miles.	›Map scale ... miles‹ e.g., map scale 5 miles

CarManuals2.com

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen.	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switch off the split screen.	›Turn off split screen‹
Adjust the split screen.	›Split screen content‹
Split screen, map facing north.	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen, current position.	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen, facing the direction of travel.	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen, perspective.	›Split screen perspective‹
Split screen, expanded intersection zoom.	›Splitscreen Exit ramp view‹
Split screen scale...feet.	›Split screen scale ... feet‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 feet
Split screen scale...meters.	›Split screen scale ... meters‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 meters
Split screen scale...kilometers.	›Split screen scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 kilometers
Split screen scale...miles.	›Split screen scale ... miles‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 miles
Split screen, highlight the traffic situation.	›Split screen, Traffic conditions‹
Split screen, computer.	›Split screen on board info‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

Function	Command
Split screen, trip computer.	›Splitscreen trip computer‹
Split screen, scale automatically.	›Split screen automatic scaling‹

CarManuals2.com

Destination guidance with intermediate destinations

Function	Command
Enter a new destination.	›Enter address‹
Trip list.	›Stored trips‹

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Open a frequency.	›Frequency ... megahertz‹ e.g., 93.5 megahertz or frequency 93.5
Open the radio.	›Radio‹
Open the FM stations.	›F M‹
Open the manual search.	›Manual‹
Select a frequency range.	›Select frequency‹
Open a station.	›Select station‹

AM

Function	Command
Open a frequency.	›Frequency ... Kilohertz‹ e.g., frequency 753 or 753 kilohertz
Open the AM stations.	›A M‹
Open the manual search.	›Manual‹

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Open the satellite radio.	›Satellite radio‹
Switch on the satellite radio.	›Satellite radio on‹
Select a satellite radio channel.	›Select satellite radio‹ e.g., satellite radio channel 2

CarManuals2.com

Stored stations

Function	Command
Open the stored stations.	›Presets‹
Choose a stored station.	›Select preset‹
Select a stored station.	›Preset ...‹ e. g., stored station 2

CD/Multimedia

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Select a track.	›Track ...‹ e.g., track 5 or ›C D track ...‹ e.g., CD track 5
Play back a CD.	›C D on‹
Select a CD.	›Select C D‹
Select a CD and track.	›C D ... track ...‹ e.g., CD 3 track 5
Open the CD and Multimedia menus.	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD.	›C D‹
Select a DVD.	›D V D ...‹ e.g. DVD 3
Display the entertainment details on a split screen.	›Entertainment details‹

Music collection

Function	Command
Search for music, open a menu.	›Music search‹
Open the current playback.	›Current playback‹
Open the music collection.	›Music collection‹
Play back the music collection.	›Music collection on‹
Play back the most frequently played tracks.	›Top fifty‹

CarManuals2.com

External devices

Function	Command
Open the external devices.	›External devices‹
Open the Bluetooth devices.	›Bluetooth‹
AUX at front.	›AUX front‹

Tone

Function	Command
Open the tone settings.	›Tone‹

Telephone

Function	Command
Dial a phone number.	›Dial number‹
Opens the Telephone menu.	›Telephone‹
Display the phone book.	›Phonebook‹
Redialing.	›Redial‹
Display received calls.	›Received calls‹
List of messages.	›Messages‹
Open the Bluetooth devices.	›Bluetooth‹

Office

Function	Command
Open the Office menu.	›Office‹
Display Office Today.	›Current office‹
Display the contacts.	›Contacts‹
Display the messages.	›Messages‹
Display the calendar.	›Calendar‹
Display the tasks.	›Tasks‹
Display the reminders.	›Reminders‹

CarManuals2.com

Contacts

Function	Command
Select a name.	›Choose name‹
My contacts.	›My contacts‹
Open the contacts.	›Contacts‹
New contact.	›New contact‹

BMW Assist or ConnectedDrive

Function	Command
Open BMW Assist.	›B M W Assist‹
Open ConnectedDrive.	›Connected Drive‹
Open BMW Search.	›B M W Online‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

CarManuals2.com

Everything from A to Z

Index

CarManuals2.com

A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 101
Activated-charcoal filter 124
Adaptive brake lights, refer to Brake force display 100
Adaptive light control 87
Additional telephone 204
Additives, oil 248
Adjustments, seats/head restraints 46
After washing vehicle 266
Airbags 90
Airbags, indicator/warning light 91
Air circulation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 120, 123
Air, dehumidifying, refer to Cooling function 123
Air distribution, manual 119, 122
Air drying, refer to Cooling function 120
Air pressure, tires 237
Air vents, refer to Ventilation 124
Air volume, automatic climate control 120, 123
Alarm system 41
Alarm, unintentional 42
All around the center console 14
All around the headliner 15
All around the steering wheel 12
ALL program, automatic climate control 123
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 243
All-wheel-drive 102
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter 127
Alternative oil types 249
AM/FM station 172
Announcement, navigation, refer to Spoken instructions 160
Antifreeze, washer fluid 67
Antilock Brake System, ABS 101
Anti-slip control, refer to DSC 101
Applications 229
Appointments 219
Approved axle load 273
Approved engine oils 248
Apps 229
Apps, video playback 195
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 133
Arrival time 81
Assistance, Roadside Assistance 261
Assist, BMW 224
Audio playback 181
Audio playback, Bluetooth 195
AUTO H button, refer to Automatic Hold 63
AUTO intensity 122
Automatic car wash 265
Automatic climate control 119
Automatic climate control with enhanced features 121
Automatic Curb Monitor 53
Automatic deactivation, front passenger airbags 92
Automatic headlamp control 86
Automatic Hold 63
Automatic locking 37
Automatic recirculated-air control 123
Automatic tailgate 38
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 68
AUTO program, automatic climate control 122
AUTO program, climate control 120
AUTO program, intensity 122
Auto Start/Stop function 60
AUX-IN port 192
Average fuel consumption 81
Average speed 81
Axle loads, weights 273

B

Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support 48
Backrest, width 48
Backup camera 113
Balance 170
Band-Aids, refer to First aid kit 261
Bar for tow-starting/towing 263
Bass 170
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 258
Battery replacement, vehicle remote control 30
Battery, vehicle 258
Belts, safety belts 49
Beverage holder, cupholder 133
Blinds, sun protection 44
Bluetooth audio 195
Bluetooth connection, activating/deactivating 205

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 900 958 - 03 12 490

BMW Assist 224
BMW Homepage 6
BMW Internet page 6
BMW Maintenance System 251
BMW Search 226
Bottle holder, refer to Cupholder 133
Brake assistant 101
Brake discs, breaking in 138
Brake force display 100
Brake lamps, brake force display 100
Brake lights, adaptive 100
Brake pads, breaking in 138
Braking, notes 139
Breakdown assistance 260, 261
Breaking in 138
Brightness of Control Display 84
Bulb replacement 254
Bulb replacement, front 254
Bulb replacement, rear 257
Bulbs and lamps 254
Button, Start/Stop 59
Bypassing, refer to Jump-starting 261

C

Calendar 219
California Proposition 65 Warning 7
Camera, backup camera 115
Camera, care 268
Camera, Top View 117
Can holder, refer to Cupholder 133
Car battery 258
Car care products 266
Care, displays 268
Care, vehicle 266
Cargo 141
Cargo area 129
Cargo area lid 37
Cargo area, storage compartments 134
Cargo cover 129
Cargo straps, securing cargo 142
Car key, refer to Remote control 30
Carpet, care 267
Car wash 265
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 138
CBS Condition Based Service 251
CD/DVD 180
CDs, storing 187
Cell phone 204
Center armrest 133
Center console 14
Central locking system 33
Central screen, refer to Control Display 16
Changes, technical, refer to Safety 6
Changing parts 253
Changing wheels 258
Changing wheels/tires 242
Check Control 73
Children, seating position 55
Children, transporting safely 55
Child restraint fixing system 55
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 56
Child restraint fixing systems, mounting 55
Child safety locks 58
Child seat, mounting 55
Child seats 55
Chrome parts, care 267
Cleaning, displays 268
Climate control 119, 121
Clock 76
Closing/opening from inside 37
Closing/opening via door lock 36
Closing/opening with remote control 34
Clothes hooks 134
Collision warning 107
Combination switch, refer to Turn signals 65
Combination switch, refer to Wiper system 65
Comfort Access 40
COMFORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 105
Compartments in the doors 133
Computer 80
Concierge service 225
Condensation on windows 120, 123
Condensation under the vehicle 140
Condition Based Service CBS 251
Confirmation signal 35
Contacts 215
Control Display 16
Control Display, settings 82
Controller 16
Control systems, driving stability 101
Convenient opening 34
Coolant 250
Coolant temperature 75
Cooling function 120, 123
Cooling, maximum 122
Cooling system 250
Corrosion on brake discs 140
Cruise control 108
Cruising range 76
Cupholder 133
Current fuel consumption 77
Current location, storing 152
Customer Relations 227

CarManuals2.com

D

Damage, tires 242
Damping control, dynamic 103
Data, technical 272
Date 76
Daytime running lights 86
Defrosting, refer to Windows, defrosting 120, 123
Dehumidifying, air 123
Destination distance 81
Destination guidance 158
Destination guidance with intermediate destinations 157
Destination input, navigation 150
Digital clock 76
Digital radio 173
Dimensions 272
Dimmable exterior mirrors 53
Dimmable interior rearview mirror 54
Direction indicator, refer to Turn signals 65
Display, ECO PRO 145
Display, electronic, instrument cluster 72
Display in windshield 117
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 88
Displays 71
Displays, cleaning 268
Disposal, coolant 250
Disposal, vehicle battery 259
Distance control, refer to PDC 111
Distance to destination 81
Divided screen view, split screen 20
Door lock, refer to Remote control 30
Downhill control 102
Drive-off assistant, refer to DSC 101
Driving Experience Switch 104
Driving instructions, breaking in 138
Driving notes, general 138
Driving stability control systems 101
Driving tips 138
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 101
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 102
DVD/CD 180
DVD/CD notes 186
DVD changer 184
DVD settings 183
DVDs, storing 187
DVD, video 182
Dynamic Damping Control 103
Dynamic destination guidance 165
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 101
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 102

E

ECO PRO 145
EfficientDynamics 146
EfficientDynamics menu, refer to ECO PRO 145
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 72
Electronic engine oil level check 247
Electronic Stability Program ESP, refer to DSC 101
Emergency detection, remote control 31
Emergency release, door lock 37
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 234
Emergency Request 260
Emergency service, refer to Roadside Assistance 261
Emergency start function, engine start 31
Energy Control 77
Energy recovery 77
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 60
Engine, automatic switch-off 60
Engine compartment 245
Engine compartment, working in 245
Engine coolant 250
Engine oil 247
Engine oil, adding 248
Engine oil additives 248
Engine oil change 249
Engine oil filler neck 248
Engine oil temperature 75
Engine oil types, alternative 249
Engine oil types, approved 248
Engine start during malfunction 31
Engine start, jump-starting 261
Engine start, refer to Starting the engine 60
Engine stop 60
Engine temperature 75
Entering a car wash 265
Equalizer 170
Equipment, interior 126
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC 101
Exchanging wheels/tires 242
Exhaust system 138
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 53
Exterior mirrors 52
External devices 192
External start 261
External temperature display 76

CarManuals2.com

External temperature warning 76
Eyes for securing cargo 142

F

Fader 170
Failure message, refer to Check Control 73
False alarm, refer to Unintentional alarm 42
Fan, refer to Air volume 120, 123
Fault displays, refer to Check Control 73
Filler neck for engine oil 248
Fine wood, care 267
First aid kit 261
Fitting for towing, refer to Tow fitting 264
Flat tire, changing wheels 258
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 96
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 93
Flat tire, warning lamp 94, 97
Flooding 139
Floor carpet, care 267
Floor mats, care 267
FM/AM station 172
Fold-out position, windshield wipers 67
Foot brake 139
Front airbags 90
Front fog lamps 88
Front fog lamps, front, bulb replacement 256
Front lamps 254
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 92
Front passenger airbags, indicator lamp 92
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 96
Fuel cap 234
Fuel consumption, current 77
Fuel consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption 81
Fuel filler flap 234
Fuel gauge 75
Fuel quality 236
Fuel, tank capacity 274
Fuse 259

CarManuals2.com

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 126
Gas station recommendation 160
Gear change, automatic transmission 68
General driving notes 138
Glass sunroof, refer to Panoramic glass sunroof 44
Glove compartment 132
Gong, volume equalization 171
GPS navigation 150
Gray display of the map 164
Gross vehicle weight, approved 273

H

Handbrake, refer to Parking brake 62
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 127
Hazard warning flashers 260
HDC Hill Descent Control 102
HD Radio 173
Head airbags 90
Headlamp control, automatic 86
Headlamp courtesy delay feature 86
Headlamp courtesy delay feature via remote control 35
Headlamp flasher 65
Headlamp flasher, bulb replacement 255
Headlamp glass 254
Headlamps 254
Headlamps, care 266
Headlamp washer system 65
Headliner 15
Head restraints 46
Head restraints, front 50
Head restraints, rear 51
Head-up Display 117
Head-up Display, care 268
Heavy cargo, stowing 142
Height, vehicle 272
High-beam Assistant 87
High beams 65
High beams/low beams, refer to High-beam Assistant 87
High beams, bulb replacement 255
Hill Descent Control HDC 102
Hills 140
Hints 6
Holder for beverages 133
Homepage 6
Hood 245
Horn 12
Hot exhaust system 138
House number, entering for navigation 151
HUD Head-up Display 117
Hydroplaning 139

I

Ice warning, refer to External temperature warning 76
Icy roads, refer to External temperature warning 76
Identification marks, tires 240
Identification number, refer to Important features in the engine compartment 245
iDrive 16
Ignition key, refer to Remote control 30

Ignition off 59
Ignition on 59
Indication of a flat tire 94, 97
Individual air distribution 119, 122
Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile 31
Inflation pressure, tires 237
Inflation pressure warning, tires 96
Info display, refer to Computer 80
Information on the navigation data 165
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 97
Initializing, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 94
Instrument cluster 71
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 72
Instrument lighting 88
Integrated key 30
Integrated universal remote control 126
Intensity, AUTO program 122
Interactive map 155
Interior equipment 126
Interior lamps 89
Interior lamps via remote control 35
Interior motion sensor 42
Interior rearview mirror 54
Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature 54
Intermediate destinations 157
Internet page 6
Intersection, entering for navigation 151
Interval display, service requirements 77
iPod/iPhone 192

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 258
Jack, refer to Vehicle jack 258
Joystick, automatic transmission 68
Jump-starting 261

K

Key/remote control 30
Keyless Go, refer to Comfort Access 40
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 31
Kickdown, automatic transmission 68
Knee airbag 90

L

Lamp replacement 254
Lamp replacement, front 254
Lamp replacement, rear 257
Lamps 85
Lamps and bulbs 254
Lane departure warning 98
Lane margin, warning 98
Language on Control Display 83
Lashing eyes, securing cargo 142
LATCH child restraint fixing system 56
Leather, care 266
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 254
Length, vehicle 273
Letters and numbers, entering 21
Light-alloy wheels, care 267
Light control 87
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 254
Lighting 85
Lighting via remote control 35
Light switch 85
Load 141
Loading 141
Lock, door 36
Locking/unlocking from inside 37
Locking/unlocking via door lock 36
Locking/unlocking with remote control 34
Locking, automatic 37
Locking, central 33
Locking via tailgate 38
Lock, power window 43
Locks, doors, and windows 58
Low beams 85
Low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam Assistant 87
Lower back support 48
Luggage compartment roller cover 129
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 140
Lumbar support 48

M

Maintenance 251
Maintenance requirements 251
Maintenance, service requirements 77
Maintenance system, BMW 251
Malfunction displays, refer to Check Control 73
Manual air distribution 119, 122
Manual air volume 120, 123
Manual brake, refer to Parking brake 62
Manual mode, transmission 69

CarManuals2.com

Manual operation, backup camera 113
Manual operation, door lock 37
Manual operation, exterior mirrors 53
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 234
Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC 112
Manual operation, Top View 116
Map, destination entry 155
Map in split screen 162
Map view 160
Marking on approved tires 243
Marking, run-flat tires 244
Master key, refer to Remote control 30
Maximum cooling 122
Maximum speed, display 78
Maximum speed, winter tires 243
Measure, units of 84
Medical kit 261
Memory, seat, mirror 52
Menu, EfficientDynamics 146
Menu in instrument cluster 80
Menus, operating, iDrive 16
Menus, refer to iDrive operating concept 17
Message list, traffic bulletins 162
Messages 217
Microfilter 121, 124
Minimum tread, tires 242
Mirror 52
Mirror memory 52
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 139
Mobile phone 204
Mode, ECO PRO 145
Modifications, technical, refer to Safety 6
Moisture in headlamp 254
Monitor, refer to Control Display 16
Mounting of child restraint fixing systems 55
MP3 player 192
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 12
Multimedia 180
Music collection 187
Music search 188
Music, storing 187

N

Navigation 150
Navigation data 165
Neck restraints, front, refer to Head restraints 50
Neck restraints, rear, refer to Head restraints 51
New wheels and tires 242
No Passing Information 78
Notes 220
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 263

O

OBD Onboard Diagnostics 252
Obstacle marking, backup camera 114
Odometer 76
Office 214
Oil 247
Oil, adding 248
Oil additives 248
Oil change 249
Oil change interval, service requirements 77
Oil filler neck 248
Oil level check 247
Oil types, alternative 249
Oil types, approved 248
Old batteries, disposal 259
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 252
Onboard monitor, refer to Control Display 16
Onboard vehicle tool kit 253
Opening/closing from inside 37
Opening/closing via door lock 36
Opening/closing with remote control 34
Operating concept, iDrive 16
Optional equipment, standard equipment 6
Outside air, refer to Automatic recirculated-air control 123
Overheating of engine, refer to Coolant temperature 75
Overtaking prohibitions 78

P

Paint, vehicle 266
Pair mobile phone 205
Panic mode 35
Panoramic glass sunroof 44
Park Distance Control PDC 111
Parked-car ventilation 124
Parked vehicle, condensation 140
Parking aid, refer to PDC 111
Parking brake 62
Parking lamps 85
Parking lamps, bulb replacement 255
Parking with Auto Hold 63
Partition net 131
Passenger side mirror, tilting downward 53
Pathway lines, backup camera 113
PDC Park Distance Control 111
Performance Control 102
Personal information 214

CarManuals2.com

Personal Profile 31
Phone 204
Pinch protection system, glass sunroof 45
Pinch protection system, windows 43
Plastic, care 267
PlugIn 229
Position, storing 152
Postal code, entering in navigation 151
Power failure 259
Power windows 42
Pressure, tire air pressure 237
Pressure warning, tires 96
Profile, refer to Personal Profile 31
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 20
Protective function, glass sunroof 45
Protective function, windows 43
Push-and-turn switch, refer to Controller 16

R

Radiator fluid 250
Radio 172
Radio-operated key, refer to Remote control 30
Radio ready state 59
Rain sensor 66
Random 181
Random playback 181
RDS 173
Reading out loud 221
Rear lamps 257
Rear socket 129
Rearview mirror 52
Rear window defroster 121, 123
Recirculated-air filter 124
Recirculated-air mode 120, 123
Recommended tire brands 243
Refueling 234
Remaining range 76
Reminders 221
Remote control/key 30
Remote control, malfunction 36
Remote control, universal 126
Renaming a station 173
Replacement fuse 259
Replacing parts 253
Replacing wheels/tires 242
Reporting safety defects 8
Reserve warning, refer to Range 76
Resetting, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 94
Retaining straps, securing cargo 142
Retreaded tires 243
Roadside Assistance 225
Roadside parking lamps 86
Roller sunblinds 44
Roof load capacity 273
Roof-mounted luggage rack 140
Rope for tow-starting/towing 263
Route 159
Route criteria, route 158
Route, displaying 159
Routes, avoiding 158
Route section, bypassing 159
RSC Run Flat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires 244
Rubber components, care 267
Run-flat tires 244

S

Safe braking 139
Safety 6
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 50
Safety belts 49
Safety belts, care 267
Safety switch, windows 43
Safety systems, airbags 90
Satellite radio 174
Saving fuel 0
Scale, changing during navigation 161
Screen, refer to Control Display 16
Screwdriver 253
Screw thread for tow fitting 264
Search, refer to BMW Search 226
Seat and mirror memory 52
Seat belts, refer to Safety belts 49
Seat heating, front 49
Seat heating, rear 49
Seating position for children 55
Seats 46
Selection list in instrument cluster 80
Selector lever, automatic transmission 68
Sensors, care 268
Service and warranty 7
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 251
Service requirements, display 77
Service, Roadside Assistance 261
Settings on Control Display 82
Settings, storing for seat, mirror 52
Shifting, automatic transmission 68

CarManuals2.com

Shift paddles on steering wheel 70
Short commands 275
Side airbags 90
Signaling, horn 12
Signals when unlocking 35
Sitting safely 46
Size 272
Slide/tilt glass roof 44
Smallest turning circle 273
Snap-in adapter, mobile phone 212
Snow chains 244
Socket 128
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 252
Software applications, iPhone 229
Software update 199
Spare fuse 259
Special destinations, navigation 153
Specified engine oil types 248
Speed, average 81
Speed limit detection, onboard computer 81
Speed limiter, display 78
Speed Limit Information 78
Speed limit in the computer 81
Speed Volume, volume equalization 171
Split screen 20
Split screen map settings 162
Spoken instructions, navigation 160
SPORT+ - program, Dynamic Driving Control 104
Sport automatic transmission 70
SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 104
Sport program, transmission 69
Sport steering, variable 104
Stability control systems 101
Start/stop, automatic function 60
Start/Stop button 59
Start function during malfunction 31
Starting the engine 60
State/province, selecting for navigation 150
Stations, stored 178
Station, storing 172
Status display, tires 93
Status information, iDrive 19
Status of Owner's Manual 6
Steering wheel, adjusting 54
Steering wheel heating 54
Steptronic, automatic transmission 68
Stopping the engine 60
Storage compartments 132
Storage compartments, locations 132
Storage, tires 243
Storing the vehicle 268
Street, entering for navigation 151
Summer tires, tread 241
Supplementary text messages 74
Switch for Dynamic Driving Control 104
Switch-on times, parked-car ventilation 125
Switch, refer to Cockpit 12
Symbols 6

T

Tachometer 75
Tailgate 37
Tailgate, automatic 38
Tailgate via remote control 35
Tail lamps 257
Tasks 220
Technical changes, refer to Safety 6
Technical data 272
TeleServices 225
Temperature, automatic climate control 120, 122
Temperature display, external temperature 76
Temperature, engine oil 75
Terminal, jump-starting 262
Text messages 217
Text messages, supplementary 74
Theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 41
Theft protection, refer to Central locking system 33
Thigh support 48
Tilt alarm sensor 42
Time of arrival 81
Tire damage 242
Tire identification marks 240
Tire inflation pressure 237
Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM 96
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 93
Tires, changing 242
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 237
Tires, run-flat tires 244
Tire tread 241
Toll roads, route 158
Tone 170
Tools 253
Top View 115
Total vehicle weight 273
Tow fitting 264
Towing 263
Town/city, navigation 151
Tow-starting 263
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 93
Traction control 102
TRACTION program, Dynamic Driving Control 102
Traffic bulletins, navigation 162

CarManuals2.com

Transmission, automatic 68
Transporting children safely 55
Tread, tires 241
Treble, tone 170
Trip computer 82
Triple turn signal activation 65
Trip odometer 76
Trunk lid 37
Turning circle 273
Turning circle lines, backup camera 114
Turn signals, operation 65

U

Unintentional alarm 42
Units of measure 84
Universal remote control 126
Unlock button, automatic transmission 69
Unlocking/locking from inside 37
Unlocking/locking via door lock 36
Unlocking/locking with remote control 34
Updates made after the editorial deadline 6
Updating software 199
Upholstery care 266
USB audio interface 192
USB interface 133

V

Variable sport steering 104
Vehicle battery 258
Vehicle battery, replacing 258
Vehicle, breaking in 138
Vehicle care 266
Vehicle equipment 6
Vehicle identification number, refer to Identification number in the engine compartment 245
Vehicle jack 258
Vehicle paint 266
Vehicle storage 268
Vehicle wash 265
Ventilation 124
Ventilation, refer to Parked-car ventilation 124
Version of the navigation data 165
Video playback 182
Video playback, iPhone 195
Video playback, snap-in adapter 195
Voice activation, short commands 275
Voice activation system 22
Volume, setting 170

W

Warning messages, refer to Check Control 73
Warning triangle 261
Washer fluid 67
Washer fluid reservoir, capacity 274
Washer nozzles, windshield 67
Washer system 65
Washing, vehicle 265
Water on roads 139
Weights 273
Welcome lamps 85
Wheel base, vehicle 273
Wheels, changing 242
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 237
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 96
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 93
Width, vehicle 272
Window defroster, rear 121, 123
Windows, powered 42
Windshield washer fluid 67
Windshield washer nozzles 67
Windshield washer system 65
Windshield wiper 65
Windshield wipers, fold-out position 67
Winter storage, care 268
Winter tires, suitable tires 243
Winter tires, tread 241
Wiper blades, replacing 253
Wiper fluid 67
Wiper system 65
Wood, care 267
Word match concept, navigation 21
Wrench 253

X

xDrive 102
Xenon headlamps, bulb replacement 255

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com